THE STUDENTS' SERIES

NEW LATIN COMPOSITION

DANIELL—BROWN

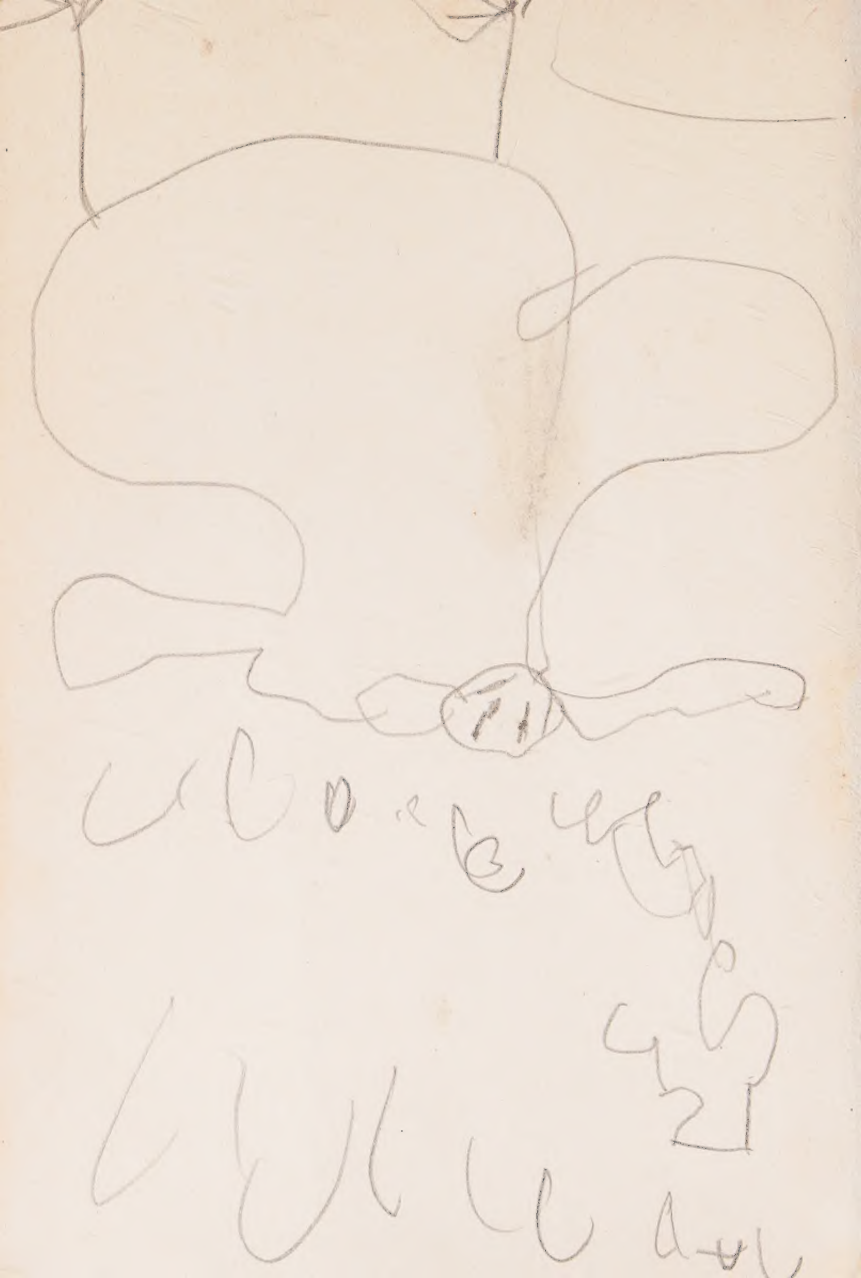
Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2026

https://archive.org/details/newlatincomposit0000mose

S. H. S.
1911
Purple & yello

David Underwood.
Tecumseh Mich.

R. 7, D #3



The Students' Series of Latin Classics

NEW

LATIN COMPOSITION

PART I, CÆSAR; PART II, CICERO
PART III, A SYSTEMATIC GRAMMATICAL REVIEW

BY

MOSES GRANT DANIELL

REVISED WITH THE ASSISTANCE OF

SELDON L. BROWN

PRINCIPAL OF HIGH SCHOOL, WELLESLEY, MASS.

οὐ πόλλ' ἀλλὰ πολυ

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO.
BOSTON, U.S.A.
1907

Copyright, 1905,
By MOSES GRANT DANIELL and SELDON L. BROWN.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

Although in the process of revision this book has been practically rewritten, all the fundamental principles which have characterized its predecessors and made them so successful have been retained. The authors' experience as text-book makers and teachers, the verdict of a multitude of teachers who have used the former book, the attitude of the universities and colleges of highest rank, the reports of the various Latin conferences, as well as the recent flattering imitations of the earlier books, afford a very convincing indorsement of the purpose and method of this present work. At the same time new features suggested by experience and developed by the application of sound pedagogical principles have been added. Those familiar with the last edition will here miss no desirable feature of the former book and will find many new ones.

Plan. — That the Latin Composition in the secondary school should be based on the text read is a principle now so generally accepted that its soundness and practical wisdom may safely be assumed. To take immediate advantage of the pupil's live interest in the lesson just translated, to utilize the attention and concentration already attained, — these solid and tangible gains far outweigh the very largely theoretical acquisitions which are supposed to flow from mere grammatical and rhetori-

cal sequences. These latter have received due consideration in this book, but the authors have never sacrificed for them the all-important stimulus of the concrete examples in the lesson of the day. The coördination thus achieved causes the composition and translation to supplement each other, and both improve and thrive in such wholesome and helpful companionship.

How to use the Book. — The best results will follow the use of this book if the *oral portions* are really *taken orally*. They should never be written. The ear has been enlisted altogether too little as an ally in the acquisition of Latin. Fifteen minutes of rapid oral work will give the pupils more command of Latin vocabulary and construction than an hour spent in writing.

The recitation should proceed rapidly and the teacher's aim should be to keep the whole class during the exercise essentially in a Latin consciousness. Not one minute for each but fifteen minutes for all. It will often be of great advantage to go over the sentences in concert at the end of the lesson, so that all may obtain the maximum of actual practice. If well done, this should take from two to four minutes only. In general the oral work should proceed *parī passū* with the translation, taking each day the exercise based on the advance of the preceding day.

The idioms and phrases at the head of each lesson should be learned and kept in mind by rapid reviews, which the new arrangement makes very easy for the teacher.

The words in heavy type readily suggest many forms of vocabulary exercises which, with very little additional effort, will insure a good working vocabulary of the most important words in Cæsar and Cicero. As a

good vocabulary lies very near the foundation of all attainment in language, this part of the work should never be slighted; and in this connection the synonyms called for should be thoroughly mastered.

Character of the Sentences. — In each lesson a certain grammatical point will be found strongly emphasized by *six or more sentences* in which it is exemplified. Very frequently also the points of the lessons immediately preceding have been introduced and in this way the book demands and insures a constant review.

The Written Exercises. — The pages designed for written composition have been entirely rewritten. These should be used at intervals in connection with reviews, should be carefully written with due attention to emphasis and rhythm, and the *long vowels should always be marked.* For greater convenience the chapter numbers have been inserted so that the pupil may know the limits of the passage on which his lesson is based. In some cases familiarity with certain very common words has been assumed. In this part of the work an effort has been made to preserve the historical substance and proportion of the various books and orations so that the pupil will actually write in Latin a *résumé* of the work he has read.

In Part I the exercises are so graded that the class may begin with either the first or second book of Cæsar. In Part II the Manilian Law has been added.

Part III. Grammatical Review. — This is designed to furnish a thorough, systematic, final drill upon the rules of syntax, and is a prose composition of itself. The sentences used are the authors' translations of Latin sentences taken, with few exceptions, from various classical

sources, chiefly Cæsar and Cicero. These exercises will serve to crystallize the pupil's knowledge of syntax after his extensive practice in writing from Latin models. This Third Part may well be used while classes are reading Vergil and Ovid.

College Examination Papers. — These are specimens of the recent entrance examination papers of several of the leading colleges and universities. They are to be used at the discretion of the teacher for sight work, or simply as tests of the pupil's attainment, and therefore are unaccompanied by notes or vocabulary.

Table of Synonyms. — This has been added in the belief that such study as is here provided will be of great value to the student in strengthening his vocabulary by calling his attention to the distinctive meanings of many synonymous words, and thereby leading him to a better appreciation of whatever Latin he may read. This table deals only with words that are used in the exercises and is adapted as far as possible to the needs of preparatory students.

To Professor E. M. Pease, editor-in-chief of *The Students' Series*, we are indebted for wise counsel and valuable aid. J. W. H. Walden, Ph.D., of Harvard has done some useful work in the preparation of Part III. To the thousands of teachers who have used the former editions and to the scores of teachers who have been consulted and have made valuable suggestions in the revision, the thanks of the authors are due.

M. G. D.
S. L. B.

August, 1905.

CONTENTS

PART I. — CÆSAR

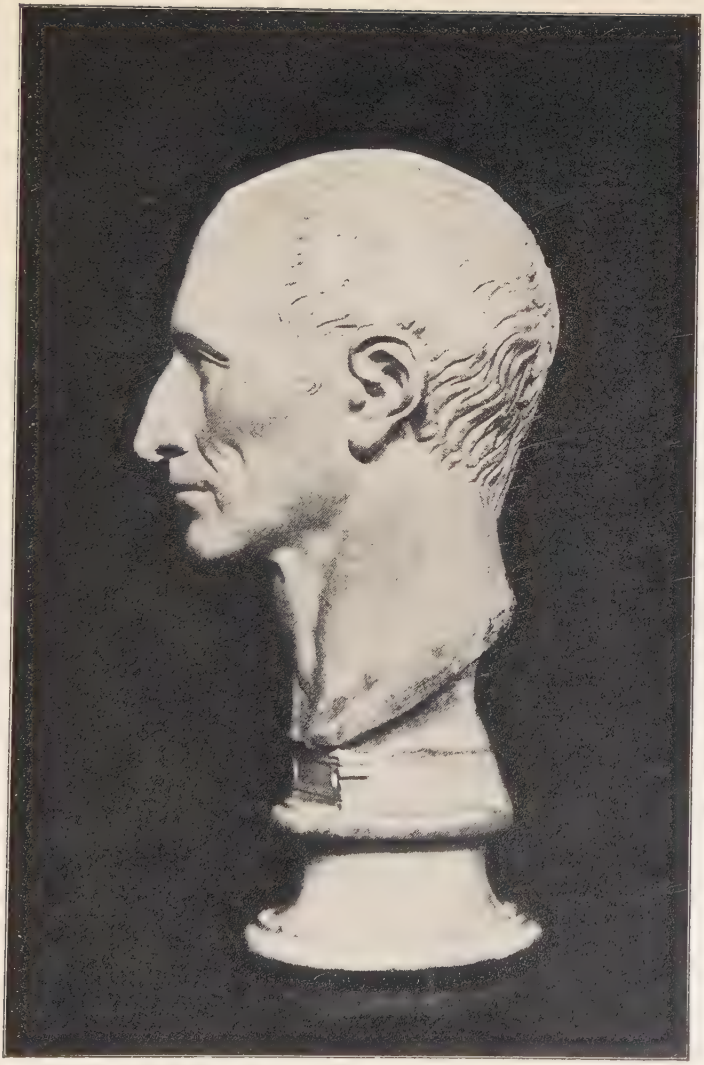
	PAGE
Introductory Notes	2
Exercises for Oral Translation	3
Exercises for Written Translation	50

PART II. — CICERO

Introductory Notes	72
Exercises for Oral Translation	73
Exercises for Written Translation	119

PART III

Grammatical Review	137
Vocabulary to Part III	215
College Entrance Examination Papers	239
Table of Synonyms	253
Grammatical Index	265



CAESAR.

(From the bust in the British Museum.)

PART I

BASED UPON CÆSAR: GALLIC WAR, BOOKS I–IV

INTRODUCTORY NOTES

1. Thorough preparation of the text of Cæsar ought to be sufficient preparation for these exercises. The text furnishes the vocabulary and the models of syntax, order and arrangement, idioms, etc.

2. The grammatical references are to the grammars of Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), and Harkness (H.). References in parentheses are to the old edition. A comma is to be understood as meaning "and"; ff. = "and following"; cf. = "compare." The student is advised for his own convenience to underscore the references to his own particular grammar.

3. The numbers in parentheses are references to the Grammatical Index, p. 265. Words inclosed in brackets [ ] are to be omitted in translation. A superior s (*e.g.* called[s]) refers to the Table of Synonyms, p. 253.

4. Preceding the sentences in most of the chapters are *common phrases* and *idioms*, which are to be learned and frequently repeated.

5. To aid in the acquisition of a vocabulary, certain words in each chapter of the exercises for oral translation are printed in heavy-faced type. These words call for the most common Latin words, and it is expected that they will be thoroughly learned. The text of the passage under consideration will show what Latin equivalents are wanted.

6. *The student may expect to find at least six instances in each chapter of the special topic of that chapter.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

BOOK I

Subject Nominative. Predicate Nominative

A. 339, 283, 284 (173, 176, 185); B. 166–168; G. 203–206, 325; H. 387, 39?

Chapter 1. 1. There were three divisions of Gaul. 2. Aquitania was one of these. 3. The **languages**[1] and **laws**[s] were different. 4. Two of the **rivers** were the Marne and the Seine. 5. The Kelts were **called**[s] Gauls. 6. The merchants were often very far from the province. 7. The things which they import weaken the mind. 8. The Belgians are called the bravest. 9. The **bravery** of the Helvetians surpasses[s] that of the Germans. 10. The Belgians are **separated** from the Germans by the Rhine river. 11. Aquitania is between the Garonne river and the Pyrenees **mountains.** 12. The Germans were **kept away** from the territory of the Belgians.

Dative with Special Verbs

A. 367 (227); B. 187, ii; G. 346; H. 426, 1

Chap. 2. On one **side**; on the other side.

1. He **persuaded** them to (*ut*) go out. 2. The Helvetians surpassed[s] everybody in courage. 3. They are able to resist (*resistō*) their **neighbors.** 4. Since they surpass everybody, they are eager to make war. 5. A large **number** resisted the nobility. 6. You can easily per-

[1] See Introductory Notes, 5.

suade him of this (this to him). 7. **Can** they **get possession of** Gaul? 8. He persuaded the nobility to form a conspiracy. 9. **Men** desirous of glory will obey (*pāreō*) the consuls. 10. On the third side Helvetia is **bounded** by **lake** Geneva. 11. After a conspiracy has been formed (*abl. abs.*) they will obey Orgetorix.

Clauses of Purpose with **ut**

A. 531, 563 (317, 331); B. 282, 295; G. 545, 546; H. 568, 565

Chap. 3. To give in marriage; to exchange; to be the most powerful.

1. Orgetorix **induced** the Helvetians to buy wagons. 2. They were induced to **procure** pack-animals. 3. **Peace and** friendship were **established** with their neighbors[s] so that they might accomplish these things. 4. After they had procured wagons and pack-animals (*abl. abs.*), they **chose** Orgetorix as leader. 5. Orgetorix was called[s] **a friend.** 6. He persuaded Casticus to **seize** the throne in his own state. 7. He seized the throne in order to hold the **supremacy.** 8. Powerful nations exchanged **pledges** in order to get possession of Gaul. 9. There is no doubt that Orgetorix influenced (164) them. 10. They made peace with their neighbors that they might **go out** the third year.

Infinitive as Subject

A. 452, 1 (270, 1); B. 327, 330; G. 422, 535; H. 615

Chap. 4. 1. To commit suicide is disgraceful (*turpis*). 2. It **is necessary** for you to escape. 3. It is difficult (*difficilis*) to plead [one's] **cause** in (from) chains. 4. To reveal this **thing** was shameful. 5. Punishment had to follow. 6. You must[s] be burned with **fire.** 7. **That** he

might be **rescued**, all his household was conducted to the same place. 8. There is no doubt that he was burned[s]. 9. Is it very easy (*perfacilis*) to maintain our **rights**? 10. To have a large number of debtors was a cause of **suspicion**.

Infinitive with Subject Accusative. Tenses of the Infinitive

A. 397. *e*, 459 (240. *f*, 336. 2); B. 184, 314. 1; G. 343. 2; H. 415; A. 486, 584 (288, 336, A); B. 270, 317; G. 530, 531; H. 617–620

Chap. 5. 1. They **thought**[s] the **towns** had been burned[s]. 2. It is reported (*nūntiō*) that they are **ready**. 3. It was said (*dīcō*) that they had set fire to their **villages**. 4. They did **this** to take away the hope of returning (a return) **home**. 5. They **ordered** each one to endure[s] **danger**. 6. It was necessary (*oportet*) for them to burn[s] the **grain**. 7. They went forth from home[s]. 8. We wish (*volō*) you to adopt (use) the same plan.

Roman Calendar

A. 424. *g*, 631 (259. *e*, 376); B. 371, 372; G. p 491; H. 754 ff.

Chap. 6. To appoint a day; to be well disposed (17) toward.

1. They will go out on the 4th of April. 2. **Permit**[s] them **to go** on the 6th of May. 3. The **other way**[s] is nearest to the Allobroges. 4. They could go out from home by two routes. 5. They **thought**[s] that the Helvetians were well disposed toward them (*sē*). 6. On the 27th of March they **assembled** at (to) the **banks** of the river. 7. On the 28th of March they **crossed** the Rhone. 8. On the 1st of April it was necessary[s] for them to go into the province. 9. On the 10th of April they crossed the **bridge**.

Order of Words. Emphasis

A. 596 ff. (343 ff.); B. 348 ff.; G. 671 ff.; H. 664 ff.

NOTE. It would be well to vary the order in some of these sentences to show varying emphasis.

Chap. 7. To inform one; to be informed; to arrive at; to remember; to march.

1. Cæsar **departed** from Geneva. 2. Cæsar was informed about the march of the Helvetians. 3. It is his intention (in **mind** to him) to break down the bridge. 4. **What** (*quid*) was the intention of Cæsar? 5. They will march **through** the **province**. 6. Were they **permitted**[s] to do this? 7. You may **take** a **day** for deliberation (*gerund*). 8. They are people of an unfriendly disposition. 9. Will they refrain from injury? 10. **Return** on the 12th of April (**165**). 11. If you wish, you may return on the Kalends of April.

Genitive of Quality (Measure)

A. 345. *b* (215. *b*); B. 203, 2; G. 365. 2; H. 440, 3

Chap. 8. Against his (my, etc.) will, if he (etc.) is unwilling; disappointed in this hope; to say . . . not.

1. The mountain was nine hundred **feet** [high]. 2. At (*in*) the ford the river is two hundred feet [wide]. 3. Cæsar has one **legion** with him. 4. The **wall**[s] was fourteen feet in **height**. 5. They were **attempting**[s] to cross against Cæsar's will. 6. The river is nineteen feet in depth. 7. He will not grant a passage to **any one**. 8. He said that the day had not **come**. 9. The vessels were forty feet in length (*longitūdō*). 10. They crossed on rafts twelve feet long and three feet wide. 11. Can you build a raft?

Ablative Absolute

A. 419, 420 (255); B. 227; G. 409, 410; H. 489

Chap. 9. To marry (a woman); to have very great influence; a revolution, change; to exchange.

1. Since they are unwilling, we cannot go through the pass. 2. If Cæsar is **unwilling**, I will not go. 3. When this has been **undertaken**, he will marry the daughter of Dumnorix. 4. If Dumnorix **is** mediator, we can persuade the Sequanians. 5. I will do these things, although **envoys** have been **sent**. 6. When the Sequanians have been persuaded, we shall be able to cross their land (*ager*).

Dative with Compounds

A. 370 (228); B. 187, iii; G. 347; H. 429

Chap. 10. To intend; very dangerous for; forced march.

1. It is very dangerous for the Romans to **have** (163) the Helvetians as neighbors[s] (34). 2. The **lieutenant** was **put in command** of the heights. 3. He puts a lieutenant over **these** legions. 4. Then he makes war upon (*bellum īnferō*) the Caturiges. 5. If we should seize higher **positions**, they would resist (*obsistō*, 54) us. 6. Three legions were **defeated**[s] in (by) **battle**[s]. 7. Labienus was in command[s] of (*praesum*) that **fortification**. 8. Labienus inspired (*iniciō*) terror (*terror*) in his enemies.

Supine in -um

A. 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633

Chap. 11. Nothing left; to retreat.

1. Ambassadors have come to **ask**[s] **for aid**[s]. 2. They came to **lay waste** the fields. 3. They sent us to remind (*moneō*) you. 4. At the same **time** (21) our **children**[s] have

been led into **slavery**. 5. Cæsar did not **wait** till there was (180) **nothing left**. 6. The army had come **to take** the town by storm. 7. We have been sent to lead away the children as hostages. 8. They were marching (*eō*) to defend their towns. 9. We (64) must not wait; he must not wait; you must not wait.

Ablative Absolute for English Perfect Active Participle

A. 493, 2 (290. *d*), B. 227; G. 410, 1; H. 640. 4

Chap. 12. In the third **watch**; not only . . . but also.

1. Having **killed**[s] Cassius, they sent his **army**[s] **under** the yoke. 2. Having sent his army[s] under the yoke, they put him to death. 3. Having **led** the army over the river, he **attacked**[s] the enemy. 4. Cassius was killed in the **same** battle[s] with (in which) Piso. 5. In which (of two) direction is Cæsar marching? 6. This canton, having brought **disaster** upon the **state**, paid the penalty. 7. Having divided the Helvetian state, he went out from home. 8. When they had crossed the river, the three scouts hid their boat in the woods.

Future Passive Participle (Gerundive) to denote Purpose

A. 500, 4 (294, *d*); B. 337. 7, *b*, 2; G. 430; H. 622

Chap. 13. To have a thing done; the war with Cassius; to build a bridge.

1. He **had** the army[s] led over the Arar. 2. He had ambassadors sent to the Helvetians. 3. He has a bridge built. 4. Having sent ambassadors to **him**, they crossed the river. 5. He gave the bridge to an officer to guard (*custōdiō*). 6. Remember **that defeat** (90). 7. We rely upon **our own** (*noster*) **valor** (12). 8. He will take care

that the **memory** shall be preserved. 9. He gave the chief an army to lead across the river.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory

A. 350 (219); B. 206; G. 376; H. 454, 455

Chap. 14. The more . . . the less; to be annoyed.

1. The Helvetians cannot forget this disgrace. 2. Men[s] sometimes forget their prosperity. 3. The Roman **people** remember (*reminīscor*) injuries. 4. They feel very indignant. 5. We have **done** nothing to **be afraid**[s] of (wherefore we should fear). 6. Remember the victories which have been granted us. 7. I **know**[s] that you boast of your **victory** (5). 8. The (7) less I am conscious of **wrong**, the more **difficult** is it to be on my guard. 9. Let us remember (*pres. subjv.* 171) the wrongs which men have **inflicted**. 10. If we are forgetful of the immortal **gods**, they will **punish**[s] us.

Ablative of Place Where

A. 426, 3 (258. *c.* 1); B. 228; G. 385–389; H. 483, 485

Chap. 15. The rear (of an army); for the present; in what direction?

1. **Cavalry** had been collected in the **camp**. 2. The cavalry will see[s] who are in the province. 3. A **few** of (from) the **horsemen joined** battle[s] **in** an unfavorable place. 4. You did not **restrain** your men from battle[s] (18). 5. A thousand of the enemy fell in the battle. 6. Cæsar **kept**[s] his men from foraging (*plur.*). 7. He kept himself in his own place. 8. The Helvetians **harassed** our men in the rear. 9. The camp was pitched in a suitable (*idōneus*) place.

Ablative with ūtor, etc.

A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477

Chap. 16. From day to day; in great measure.

1. The Hæduans **promised** grain. 2. They could not **use** the grain which they brought up on the river (22). 3. We cannot use the fodder. 4. We do **not wish**[s] to turn our course **from** the Arar. 5. The enemy got possession of (*potior*) the fields in which there was a **supply** of fodder. 6. What did the Hæduans call[s] Liscus? 7. He **complained because** he was not relieved. 8. He enjoys (*fruor*) the **war** because he is able to use many soldiers. 9. Cæsar could not get possession (*potior*) of the grain. 10. We will use the **vessels** which have been **collected** on the Arar.

Clauses of Result with quīn

A. 558, *a* (319. *d*); B. 298; G. 555, 556; H. 594. ii, 595

Chap. 17. To be very strong.

1. We **doubt** not **that** they will collect the grain. 2. Liscus did not doubt that his **plans**[s] had been exposed. 3. The Gauls are not able to hinder[s] the Romans from **holding** the supreme power. 4. We do not doubt that the Romans **deprived** Liscus of his liberty (cf. *Haeduis . . . ēreptūrī*). 5. Liscus was much more powerful than **even** Diviciacus. 6. There is no doubt (*nōn est dubium*) that he kept still as long as he could (*imperf. subjv.*). 7. Liscus **stated** what he **ought** (*perf.*) not to have stated (*pres.*). 8. They did not doubt that our plans had been disclosed[s] to the enemy. 9. The **enemy** could not be restrained from telling the cause of the danger.

Ablative of Price

A. 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478

Chap. 18. On **his own** account; on **inquiry**; a few days (7) before.

1. His personal property was exchanged (*commūtō*) for **power.** 2. No one dared to purchase the property at a high (*māgnus*) price. 3. He sold (*vēndō*) his **favor** for money (*pecūnia*). 4. He purchased the revenues at a low price. 5. Dumnorix was a man of **great** generosity (17). 6. Revenues were purchased at a high price. 7. When Dumnorix bid at half (*dīmidius*) price, **nobody dared** to bid **against** him. 8. The Hæduan will sell his power for gold (*aurum*).

Substantive Clauses of Purpose

A. 563, 564 (331); B. 295, 296; G. 546–549; H. 564–567

Chap. 19. Without his orders; without his (my, etc.) knowledge; in his presence; reason **enough.**

1. We **were afraid**[s] of hurting (*lest*, etc.) your **feelings.** 2. Cæsar advised (*moneō*) Diviciacus to punish[s] his **brother.** 3. He **urged** him to remove the interpreters. 4. Cæsar had Dumnorix **summoned**[s] (127) before him. 5. I **beg**[s] that you will summon Dumnorix before me. 6. He urges them to accuse him. 7. He entreated them to reveal what they **knew** (*subjv.*).

Direct Questions with **-ne, nōnne, num**

A. 330–332 (210); B. 162; G. 452–456; H. 378

Chap. 20. Love for (one's) brother; to have very great power; for the future.

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you **not know**[s] that he has very great[s] power? 3. Is he **influenced** by love

for his brother? 4. Has anything (*num quid*) **happened**[s] to him? 5. No one felt more (of) **pain** than he. 6. Did Diviciacus weep? 7. Did he not beg[s] these things of Cæsar with deep emotion? 8. Have done with your **entreaties**. 9. I shall **do** this with Cæsar's **approval**. 10. Don't you know what he has done (*perf. subjv.*)?

Ablative of Time

A. 423 (256); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487

Chaps. 21, 22. At daybreak; late in the day; on that day; at full speed; about the third watch.

1. At daybreak Labienus **held** the top of (39) the mountain. 2. Considius thought[s] that the enemy[s] held it on that day. 3. At **that** time Considius did not know who held it. 4. What is the **character** of the mountain? 5. Was not Considius **regarded** as skilled in **military** affairs (77)? 6. Did Labienus seize the middle (*medius*) of the **hill** late in the day? 7. On the same day the enemy **followed** him at the usual **interval**. 8. Within eight days a camp will be seen upon the hill.

In and sub with Accusative and Ablative

A. 221. 12, 22 (153); B. 143; G. 418; H. 420. 3

Chaps. 23, 24. On the next day; on the day before.

1. **Meanwhile** three veteran legions were **drawn up** in (to) **line**[s]. 2. The knapsacks were collected in (to) one place. 3. The soldiers were **stationed** by Labienus half way up the hill (on the middle hill). 4. Then they **made** an attack[s] on the Helvetians. 5. It was necessary[s] to seize the heights. 6. On that day the cavalry **withstood** the enemy's **attack**. 7. Forming a phalanx, they ad-

vanced half way up the hill (up to, etc.). 8. The **baggage** was collected by our men at the foot of (under) the hill. 9. The fugitives are advancing close up to the veteran legions.

Dative of Purpose

A. 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433

Chap. 25. The exposed flank; to advantage.

1. It is a great **hindrance** to the enemy[s] that (*quod*, 175) their **shields** are fastened together. 2. Was it a small (*parvus*) hindrance to us that the left hand was **shackled**? 3. Could they **fight**[s] to advantage with their left hands shackled? 4. The Boii were a **protection** to the rear. 5. Having broken through the phalanx, they drew their **swords**. 6. The third line served as a **reinforcement** (*subsidium*) to the second. 7. There is no doubt (*nōn est dubium*) that the Gauls aided Cæsar's enemies. 8. The mountain was a great obstacle to the **army**[s] **on the march**.

Passive of Intransitive Verbs

A. 146. *d*, 372 (208. *d*, 230); B. 187. ii, *b*, 256. 3; G. 208. 2, 346. R.[1]; H. 302. 6

Chap. 26. Until late at night.

1. **Long** and **fiercely** the battle raged. 2. They fought **till** late at **night**. 3. One party withstood the attack, the other could not. 4. There is sharp fighting at the foot of the mountain. 5. Orgetorix had two daughters, **one** of whom was **captured**. 6. The wagons served as a defence (*praesidium*) for the Helvetians who had been spared (*parcō*). 7. The Lingones were not persuaded (*persuādeō*). 8. We were spared because we **assisted** the soldiers.

Temporal Clauses with **cum**

A. 545–548 (325); B. 288, 289; G. 580, 585; H. 600, 601

Chap. 27. In the early part of the night.

1. **When** they had **met** Cæsar, they sued for peace. 2. When they had **arrived** there (thither), they waited for Cæsar's **coming**. 3. When they were ordered[s] to give hostages, they obeyed. 4. They searched for the **arms** and collected them. 5. When we **give up** our arms[s], Cæsar will punish[s] us. 6. When they had given up their arms, they were punished. 7. When they had **hidden** their arms, they thought[s] they must[s] depart.

Dative of Reference

A. 376 (235); B. 188; G. 352; H. 425. 1, 2, 4

Chap. 28. At home; to consider as enemies; **equal** with.

1. **Bring back** for me the weapons[s]. 2. Cæsar **wished** all[s] to be blameless in his sight. 3. When (*two ways*) they **surrendered** the deserters, they were cleared in my sight. 4. All[s] their villages were **burned**[s] for them. 5. They had nothing at home for themselves. 6. In their eyes the Boii were men of **remarkable** bravery. 7. He ordered (*iubeō*) them to furnish a supply of grain for the Tulingi. 8. He ordered (*imperō*) them to rebuild the towns of the Helvetians (*dat.*).

Use of Pronouns

A. 295 ff. (102, 194 ff.); B. 242 ff.; G. 304 ff.; H. 500 ff. For more specific references, see Grammatical Index, 136–143

Chap. 30. Advantageous to Gaul, to us (*nostrō*); to inflict punishment on.

1. The Helvetians sent their **leading men out of** the state[s]. 2. Cæsar knew[s] that he (Cæsar) had revealed the

plan in the **council**[s]. 3. Cæsar knows[s] that he (*not* Cæsar) is revealing the plan[s] which had been agreed upon. 4. We will **choose** homes for these Romans which **certain ones** have abandoned[s]. 5. Certain ones will announce to him that which they wish[s] to do. 6. They had some one whom they wished to **leave**[s] in this place. 7. Let no one leave (*pres. subjv.*, 171) his home. 8. May he (is it permitted to him to) do this? 9. They may do this.

Substantive Clauses of Result

A. 568, 569 (332); B. 297; G. 553, 571

Chap. 31. The children[s] of all the **nobles**; to be put to torture; all kinds of cruelty.

1. It came to pass that **many** Germans were led over the Rhine. 2. The result will be (*futūrum est*) that they will **lose** all their cavalry. 3. Diviciacus had come to Rome (30) to the **senate**. 4. May we **treat** with you **about** these things? 5. Were they not put to torture? 6. The result was that Ariovistus **ruled** with arrogance the Gauls whom he had **conquered**[s]. 7. We **cast** ourselves at your (70) feet. 8. I will cause (*efficiō*) you to return. 9. The chiefs brought it about that they should not be put to torture. 10. Thus it happens that all the Gauls must do the same thing (cf. *omnibus . . . faciendum*). 11. What help[s] is there in the Roman people?

Indirect Questions. Sequence of Tenses

A. 573, 574 (210. 2); B. 315; G. 467; H. 649. ii;
A. 575 (334); B. 267, 1, 2; G. 509–511; H. 543–545

Chap. 32. To make no **reply**; **not even** this; to make **a speech**.

1. What was the reason of this behavior (*rēs*)? 2. I wonder what the reason was. 3. Cæsar asked[s] them what they were going to do. 4. He wondered why (*cūr*) they made no reply. 5. Who knows (*sciō*) why they are doing nothing? 6. He asked them why their **lot** was **harder** than ours. 7. I cannot find out (*reperiō*) why their **heads** are bowed.

Dative with Adjectives

A. 383, 384 (234); B. 192; G. 359; H. 434

Chap. 33. As early as possible.

1. Cæsar **said** that Ariovistus was unfriendly (*inimīcus*) to **him** (Cæsar). 2. I have great[s] **hopes** that the Germans will not **seize upon all**[s] Gaul. 3. I will attend to this. 4. It is most **disgraceful** to the Roman people[s] that Germans should cross the Rhine. 5. It is not pleasing (*grātus*) to Cæsar **or** to the **republic**. 6. It will be advantageous (*ūtilis*) to the Gauls to **emigrate** from the province. 7. The Sequanians were nearer (*propior*) the province **than** the Hæduans. 8. He knew[s] why this thing was perilous for the Hæduans. 9. The Cimbri were like (*similis*) the Teutons.

Relative Clauses of Purpose

A. 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 590

Chap. 34. 1. Ambassadors were sent to treat with Cæsar. 2. Cæsar sends an officer to select a place midway between the two (middle of **both**). 3. Cæsar sent an **embassy** to reply. 4. I am resolved to (it **pleases** me that I) **treat with** you. 5. It is most disgraceful for me to come to **you**. 6. What (of) **business** had he (*dat.*, 68) in Gaul? 7. It **seems** strange to me that he is (*acc. w.*

inf.) in Gaul **at all**. 8. I will collect an army to conquer Cæsar. 9. They chose men to treat concerning the demands (noun from *postulō*) of Ariovistus. 10. They asked for a place where they might hold **a conference** (*conloquor*).

Objective Genitive

A. 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363, 2; H. 440, 2

Chap. 35. A matter of common interest; to make return, show **gratitude**.

1. Cæsar will not overlook the injuries done to the Hæduans. 2. The love (*amor*) of war was an **injury** to the Romans. 3. Cæsar did not overlook the injuries done by the Helvetians (86) to the Romans (81). 4. The Hæduans hesitated because of their fear (*metus*) of Ariovistus. 5. This can be done to the advantage of the state[s]. 6. You will have **lasting friendship** with Cæsar. 7. He knew how great (*quantus*) was the Hæduans' (*dat.*) fear of the Sequanians. 8. Ariovistus has been **treated** with great **kindness**[s] by me (by my great kindness). 9. We will not **neglect** this chance (*opportūnitās*) of occupying the province (*gerundive*, 92).

Relative Clauses of Cause or Reason

A. 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592

Chap. 36. 1. You do a great wrong in making (who make) war upon our **allies**. 2. His revenues were diminished because he interfered with Ariovistus. 3. They do a very great wrong because they do not pay tribute. 4. I **am accustomed** to govern the conquered **according to** my own judgment. 5. You ought[s] not to **interfere**

with me in my rights[s]. 6. No one **contended**[s] with Ariovistus except to (without) his own ruin[s]. 7. The Hæduans are doing a wrong in dictating to him. 8. He **exercises** his rights because he makes war when he wishes[s]. 9. He fights[s] **without** injury who is well trained.

Use of the Second Periphrastic Conjugation

A. 500. 2, 3 (294. *b*, *c*); B. 337. 7, *b*; G. 251; H. 621. 1, 2

Chaps. 37, 38. Resistance is made; on each side; resistance cannot easily be made; forced marches **night** and day.

1. We (64) must[s] hasten **lest** the Suevi **unite** with Ariovistus. 2. There was need of haste. 3. **Provisions** ought[s] to have been procured. 4. Not even by giving hostages (*abl. abs.*) could peace be purchased. 5. This **place** must be **fortified**. 6. We must take great precautions that this may not be **reported**. 7. The Harudes complained because (49) the war was prolonged. 8. You (*plur.*) will have to take your **troops** across (*trāns*) the Rhine.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose after Verbs of Fearing

A. 564 (331. *f*); B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567

Chap. 39. For the sake of **supplies**; on account (because) of friendship; commanders of cavalry.

1. I am afraid[s] that supplies cannot be brought up. 2. I fear[s] that they will not **keep back** the tears. 3. They were afraid that they could not control their countenances. 4. Cæsar feared that the soldiers would not obey orders. 5. **One** assigned one **reason**, another another. 6. To **avoid** (*not inf.*) suspicion of **fear** we shall delay a few days. 7. You fear that the **merchants**

will not **remain**. 8. We fear that the camp will not be **moved**.

Passive of Verbs that take the Dative

A. 372 (230); B. 187, ii, *b*; G. 208, 2; H. 302. 6

Chap. 40. To break camp; insurrection of slaves; in what **direction**; he is persuaded; they are persuaded.

1. I am persuaded that (*use acc. w. inf.*) Ariovistus will not **fail in** his **duty**. 2. Ariovistus was not **injured** (*noceō*) in the battle[s]. 3. They were able to judge[s] from this **how much advantage** firmness has. 4. Does duty or fear prevail with you (150)? 5. I wish to **find**[s] **out whether** duty **or** fear controls you. 6. Cæsar is obeyed (*pāreō*) because the tenth legion follows him. 7. The Romans feared[s] that they were not a match for the Germans. 8. Don't you know that Cæsar will attend to this? 9. The tenth legion was treated with indulgence by Cæsar. 10. The general will be opposed (*resistō*) if he does (shall) not furnish grain.

The Gerundive Construction

A. 503 ff. (296 ff.); B. 338. 1, 3, 339; G. 427 ff.; H. 625 ff.

Chap. 41. To thank any one (*alicuī*); the rest[s] of the legions; to have great **confidence** in any one.

1. They have the **greatest** eagerness to **carry on** the war. 2. He is ready to **lead** the army. 3. We are quite ready (*superl.*) to change our minds. 4. He was eager (*cupidus*) to do this. 5. Did we doubt or fear? 6. The troops of Ariovistus were fifteen **miles** distant from our camp. 7. There was a great desire to **accept** the apology. 8. Cæsar's **manner** of delivering this speech **changed** the **centurions'** minds.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose after Verbs of Fearing

A. 564 (331. *f*); B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567

Chap. 42. To entertain great hopes; back and forth, to and fro.

1. I am afraid **that** the **horses** will be taken away or that the **conference** will be **broken up.** 2. Ariovistus **fears**[s] that he will be **surrounded** by Cæsar. 3. He wished[s] that **each** should come with cavalry. 4. We are afraid of being (lest we be) surrounded. 5. Cæsar feared[s] that Ariovistus would reject the **terms.** 6. I fear he will do what he promised (*perf. subjv.*, 168). 7. The most expedient [way] is to put the soldiers on the horses. 8. I fear that he will **approach** too near.

Deliberative Subjunctive

A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559. 4

Chap. 43. When they had come (*impers.*) there; to carry on horseback; to **converse** on horseback.

1. We shall **take** five apiece to the conference. 2. Shall I **suffer**[s] any (*ūllus*) Germans to cross that river? 3. Who can **endure**[s] this? 4. **Who** would make war upon our allies? 5. Who would not seek[s] our friendship? 6. **Could** there be any **sufficient** reason for (of) **demanding**[s] such a favor (that thing)? 7. Then he made the same demands as (which) before. 8. Should I not call him friend?

Participle denoting Cause

A. 496 (292); B. 337. 2, *f*; G. 666; H. 638. 1

Chap. 44. To reply briefly; **up to** that time; to regard one (*aliquem*) as a friend.

1. Because I was conquered[s], I did not cross the Rhine. 2. I **abandoned**[s] my home at the request of the Gauls.

3. Ariovistus crossed the Rhine because he was **summoned**[s]. 4. He did not **come without** being asked[s]. 5. He thought[s] that the friendship of the Roman people ought[s] to be an honor (69) to him. 6. If I should kill[s] (54) Cæsar, I should be doing a favor to many Romans. 7. Because the Gauls had been **defeated**[s] they paid tribute. 8. The Germans, because they had been defeated[s] in battle, led their army out of the Roman territory.

Gerund (Genitive)

A. 504 (298); B. 338. 1, 339; G. 428; H. 626

Chaps. 45, 46. To this effect (purport).

1. Cæsar stopped **talking**. 2. The enemy did not stop **throwing** weapons. 3. It was not Cæsar's **habit**[s] to desert (163) his allies. 4. They rode up for the purpose (*causā*) of throwing **weapons**. 5. Because stones were thrown (*abl. abs.*) at us we had (68) a greater **desire** to fight. 6. **While** the horsemen were riding up (73), stones were thrown at us. 7. The custom of levying a tax on the conquered is ancient[s] and just. 8. The time of choosing the **soldiers** had been **announced**.

Ablative of Degree

A. 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479

Chap. 47. 1. Four days **afterwards** Ariovistus appointed[s] a day for a conference. 2. If you do not wish to **appoint** a day, send one (*aliquem*) of (*ex*) the soldiers. 3. There is much **less** reason for conferring than (*quam*) for sending **delegates**. 4. The **more** so (more by this) because Cæsar and Ariovistus are conferring. 5. **On account**[s] **of** your knowledge of Latin (*lingua Latīna*), we

shall **enjoy** your hospitality much more. 6. What are you coming to me for (what for = **why**)? 7. To report (for the sake[s] of reporting) things to Cæsar? 8. Ariovistus thought[s] that there was a much greater reason for conferring. 9. Ariovistus had **seen**[s] them five days before (*ante*).

Conditional Sentences: First form and Second form. Future Conditions

A. 516, 1, 2, *a–c* (307, 1, 2, *a–c*); B. 302. 1, 303; G. 595, 596; H. 574, 576, 1, 577, 1

Chaps. 48, 49. On the same day; on the **next** day; for five days running; in these days; from that day; daily[s].

1. **If** Ariovistus wishes[s] to **fight**[s], he will not **lack**[s] the **opportunity** (cf. *eī . . . deësset*). 2. If he should wish . . . he would not lack. 3. If you fall off your horse, they will **surround** you. 4. If you should fall off your horse, they would surround you. 5. Nevertheless the enemy was repelled. 6. If Ariovistus should cut me off from supplies, I would advance **quickly**. 7. If the Germans move their camp forward, they will be **cut off** from supplies.

Double or Disjunctive Questions

A. 334, 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458, 459; H. 380, 1

Chaps. 50, 51. Not **even** then; not even on the **next** day; advantageous.

1. Shall we contend[s] (**170**) or not? 2. Shall I fight **until** sunset or lead my troops back to camp? 3. Did they put the wagons in the line[s] of battle or surrender them to the Germans? 4. Is it better (*praestāre*) to **lead out** the army or to stay (*maneō*) in camp? 5. The matrons declared[s] whether or not it was (**152**) advantageous to join battle[s]. 6. Was it new moon or not

(*annōn*)? 7. The reason why he did not fight[s] was because it was **new** moon. 8. If you contend[s] before sunset, you will not conquer[s].

Relative Clauses of Characteristic

A. 535, *a* (320, *a*); B. 283. 1, 2; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 1

Chaps. 52, 53. On the **right wing**, left wing; to stop fleeing; the one . . . the other.

1. **Several** were **found**[s] who formed a phalanx. 2. There were some **who** made the attack with swords. 3. One of the two daughters of Ariovistus was captured and **slain.**[s] 4. Was there any one (*num quis*) of the Helvetians who did not **flee**? 5. What place is there where (*ubi*) they can find safety for themselves? 6. Shall he be immediately burned (170) or reserved for **another** time? 7. Many were seen who would fight hand to hand. 8. There are few who **trust** in their own **strength**[s].

BOOK II

Ablative of Agent

A. 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 467, 468

Chap. 1. To inform; to be informed; to exchange hostages; to be annoyed; changes in government.

1. Cæsar was informed **by** Labienus. 2. The Belgæ were **instigated** by some Gauls. 3. In Gaul men are **hired** by those who have the **means**. 4. All[s] the Gauls had exchanged **hostages**. 5. These are the reasons for **conspiring** (92). 6. They fear[s] that Gaul will be **subdued** by the Romans. 7. They feared that hostages would not be given by the Gauls. 8. Men were being hired by the Belgians.

Apposition

A. 282 (184); B. 169; G. 320–323; H. 393, 1–7

Chap. 2. As soon as; in the beginning of summer.

1. Two **new** legions were led into Gaul by Quintus Pedius, the lieutenant. 2. Cæsar, the **commander** (*imperātor*), **sent** Pedius. 3. He orders (*iubeō*) the Senones, **neighbors** of the Belgians, to **provide** for a supply of grain. 4. These are the reasons for **enrolling** (92) two new legions, the thirteenth and fourteenth. 5. Pedius, the lieutenant, will be sent by Cæsar, the commander. 6. It was reported to Cæsar, the general, that there was (107) a supply of fodder.

Relative Clauses of Purpose

A. 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 590

Chap. 3. Unexpectedly; sooner than any one would suppose.

1. **Ambassadors** are sent to **say**[s]; were sent to say. 2. The Remi send ambassadors to **aid** Cæsar. 3. Ourselves and all our property we surrender to you. 4. They joined themselves to the Germans who were to assist them. 5. The rest of the Belgæ are in arms. 6. The Remi use **laws**[s] to restrain the **power**[s] of their **magistrates**. 7. They had **towns** in which (*quō*) to **receive** the Romans. 8. They have grain with which to aid their relatives.

Accusative with Infinitive in Indirect Discourse

A. 580 (336. 2); B. 314; G. 343. 2; H. 642

Chap. 4. To be very strong, have great influence; not only . . . but also.

1. I **ask**[s] you what states[s] are (152) in arms? 2. It has been said[s] that Germans were led over the Rhine.

3. Cæsar **found**[s] **out** that the Gauls had been **expelled.** 4. He will find out that **each** state has promised a large[s] number. 5. He thought that the Bellovaci had great influence. 6. You are taking upon yourself the greatest **authority.** 7. The Nervii are **farthest** off. 8. They are regarded as **extremely** ferocious. 9. The Remi said that Diviciacus held the **control** of Britain. 10. He ascertained that the Germans **inhabited**[s] these regions.

Genitive with Interest

A. 355, *a* (222, *a*); B. 211. 1, *a*; G. 381; H. 449, 1

Chap. 5. To **pitch** camp; to address in generous terms.

1. It greatly concerns the **common safety.** 2. It is for the interest of the state to **collect** the forces in (to) one place. 3. Could they keep the bands of the enemy apart? 4. Sabinus said it was of great importance to him. 5. The **ditch** was five feet (80) in **depth.** 6. It is for the interest of the Remi to send **scouts.** 7. Cæsar ordered[s] supplies to be brought. 8. It is for your interest to **place** a guard there. 9. Cæsar showed them how important it was for the **cohorts** that the banks of the river should be fortified.

Accusative of Extent

A. 425 (257); B. 181; G. 335; H. 417

Chap. 6. On the march.

1. The town is twenty miles from this river. 2. That river is ten miles from the camp. 3. They can **throw** stones a hundred **paces.** 4. The Belgians had marched (*iter faciō*) a hundred miles. 5. Iccius was a man of

great **influence** (17) **among** the Remi. 6. **It is for the interest** of the soldiers to form a testudo. 7. They had formed the testudo seventy feet from the wall[s]. 8. The **gates** of the town were fifteen feet (*pēs*) wide (*lātus*).

Ablative of Degree or Measure of Difference

A. 415 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479

Chap. 7. **About** midnight; for the same reason.

1. There was much more (of) smoke than **fire**[s]. 2. Crassus will approach much nearer (*prope*) the town than Cæsar. 3. The greater (*māior*) the hope of the Remi, the less hope the enemy[s] had. 4. The camp was pitched three miles **off**; less than two miles off. 5. Balearic slingers were sent as a reinforcement to the Remi. 6. The more (*plūs*) towns they could **approach**, the more they burned[s]. 7. They are **hastening** to a town which is more than (47) four miles off.

Partitive Genitive

A. 346, *a*, 1–4 (216, *a*, 1–4); B. 201, 1, 2; G. 367–372; H. 442, 443

Chap. 8. On each side; the ends of the trenches; so (as) much space . . . as; **reputation** for valor.

1. A **multitude** of our soldiers were left in camp. 2. The **first** [ones] of those fighting will be surrounded. 3. There is **as much space** as a **line of battle** can occupy. 4. How much space does a legion occupy? 5. What (of) **support** had the camp (68)? 6. He drew up what soldiers he could. 7. He knew that the nearest [ones] of the six legions had been **stationed** at the end of the trench.

Conditional Sentences. First Form

A. 515, 516. 1 (306, 307. 1); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574

Chap. 9. With the design of **taking**; to begin.

1. If they attack our camp, we will hurry toward the swamp. 2. If our men **wait**, we shall not begin[s] to cross. 3. If they can, they will take the **redoubt**. 4. It has been **shown**[s] that the river was **behind** our **camp**. 5. If Titurius **is in command** of the redoubt (65), it cannot be taken. 6. If they take the redoubt, they will destroy the bridge. 7. If they find[s] fords, they can lead the troops over.

Passive of Verbs that take the Dative

A. 372 (230); B. 187, ii, *b*; G. 208, 2; H. 302. 6

Chap. 10. 1. They cannot be persuaded to cross the river. 2. He is induced to return (144) home. 3. You cannot be **prevailed upon** to defend them. 4. A fierce battle took place in the river. 5. A great[s] number of archers were slain[s] (*sing.*) by the **cavalry**. 6. If they cross the river, they will take the town. 7. They defended **their own territory rather** than [that of] others[s]. 8. The **rest** were not injured (*noceō*). 9. I am convinced that the enemy will attack us. 10. If Diviciacus is hurt, the cavalry will **gather** to **protect** him.

Ablative of Manner

A. 412 (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473. 3

Chap. 11. The rear (of an army); toward **sunset**; for what reason?

1. They **left**[s] (departed from) their camp with a very great noise. 2. With a **loud shout** they attacked the

rear. 3. With similar treachery they attacked the cavalry. 4. A great many were killed because they fled in disorder. 5. Everybody (each) was in a hurry to get (arrive) home (30). 6. With great danger they withdrew (*sē recipere*) to the camp. 7. They had been **commanded**[s] to withdraw to the camp in good order.

Uses of Participles. Ablative Absolute

A. 419, *a*, 420 (255, *a*, *d*); B. 227, 1, 2, 4; G. 409, 410; H. 489, 1, 3

Chaps. 12, 13. On the march; the elders.

1. The town could not be taken, although there were **few** defenders. 2. Although he **attempted**[s] to take it, he could not. 3. When the **mound** was thrown up, the Gauls were **alarmed**. 4. They gave hostages to Cæsar because they were alarmed. 5. When they had given hostages, their **surrender** was accepted. 6. While Cæsar was pitching camp, the elders came out of the town. 7. When the sheds were **brought up**, the children stretched out their **hands**.

Ablative and Genitive of Quality

A. 415, *a* (251, *a*); B. 224, 1, 3; G. 400. R., H. 473, 2.
A. 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440. 3

Chaps. 14, 15. Not only . . . but also; both . . . and; out of respect.

1. He was [a man] of the greatest **kindness**. 2. They have (are of) great **influence among** the Gauls. 3. Diviciacus said[s] that the Romans were [men] of great luxury. 4. I know[s] that the Bellovaci have brought a great **disaster** upon the state. 5. Out of respect to the Hæduans he **spared** the Belgæ. 6. Although Cæsar showed (part.

of *ūtor*) kindness **toward** them, he **demanded**[s] five hundred hostages. 7. If a man of the highest honor should do this, he would not flee. 8. The latter (*hīc*) are [men] of the greatest courage. 9. Cæsar used his authority with clemency. 10. Men with these **habits**[s] will not blame the Romans.

Amplius, etc., without quam

A. 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. 4; H. 471. 4

Chaps. 16, 17. Up to this time; to march, advance.

1. More than three hundred scouts **observed** the march of our army. 2. Cæsar learned[s] that the Nervii had no wine. 3. The river **is** more than five miles (29) **away**. 4. The army marched more than ten miles. 5. When (179) Cæsar was approaching, the Nervii **attacked**[s] him. 6. When the Nervii had **encamped more** than two miles off, **some** of the Belgæ came to them. 7. The **other**[s] legions were a great **way** off. 8. We cannot even **see through** the hedges. 9. The **marsh** was less (*minus*) than two hundred paces (80) in width. 10. They persuaded more than fifty **captives** to plunder the baggage.

Genitive of Quality (Measure)

A. 345. *b* (215. *b*); B. 203, 2; G. 365. 2; H. 440. 3

Chaps. 18, 19. To bring up the rear; to be different from; close at hand.

1. The depth of the Sambre is **about** four feet. 2. The **height** of the hill is about two hundred feet. 3. The wooded **part** of the hill is eight hundred paces in length (*longitūdō*). 4. The **plan**[s] of **march** is different from what the Belgæ report. 5. When the horsemen had been **routed**, the Nervii **hid** in the woods. 6. The line of the

enemy was about seven hundred feet long (in length). 7. The river is four hundred feet wide. 8. The trees (*arbor*) of this **forest** were about fifty feet tall.

Dative of Agent

A. 374, *a* (232, N.); B. 189, 1; G. 354, 355; H. 431

Chap. 20. 1. We have **everything** to do at once (one time). 2. You must **set up** the standard. 3. The soldiers had to **seek** turf. 4. The **experience** of the soldiers was a help (69) to the Romans. 5. They know[s] what they have to do. 6. They prescribe for themselves what they ought to do. 7. The lieutenants did not leave[s] their respective legions. 8. Cæsar had the line[s] to **form** and the soldiers to **encourage.**

Gerund and the Gerundive Construction

A. 503 ff. (296 ff.); B. 338 ff.; G. 427 ff.; H. 625 ff.

Chaps. 21, 22. Different legions in different places.

1. For the purpose of **encouraging** the soldiers he did this. 2. It is the time for (of) putting on the helmets. 3. We are **ready** for fighting[s]. 4. We have shown[s] **above** that the view was **obstructed.** 5. The **signal** for joining battle[s] had to be given by Cæsar. 6. They cannot **foresee** what will be necessary for **sustaining** the attack. 7. It was time to station the **reserves** where they could **resist** the Nervii.

Possessive Genitive

A. 343, *b* (214. *a*, *c*); B. 198; G. 362; H. 440, 1

Chap. 23. In front; the chief command; to put to flight.

1. The tenth legion routed the right wing of the Viromandui. 2. **Almost all** the camp of the Nervii was ex-

posed in front. 3. They were slain[s] by the swords of the enemy. 4. The enemy's **line**[s] was very dense. 5. The soldiers of the ninth legion discharged their **javelins**. 6. The leaders of the Viromandui, **weakened** with **wounds**, were driven into the river. 7. The line was so[s] crowded that (161) two legions had to advance into a **difficult** position. 8. They **proceeded** to the river for the sake of crossing.

Agreement of Verb with Subject

A. 316 (204); B. 254; G. 211; H. 388

Chap. 24. To withdraw, retreat; to take to **flight**; in another direction; in all directions.

1. The cavalry were with the light-armed **infantry**. 2. Our men **met** the camp-followers face to face (opposite, *adj.*). 3. The latter (*hīc*) had **gone forth** to plunder. 4. The camp was **filling up** (*pass.*) with a multitude of the Nervii. 5. Cæsar's legions were **hard pressed** by the cavalry. 6. They were **frightened** by the shouts of the camp-followers.

Dative of Separation

A. 381 (229); B. 188. 2, *d*; G. 347. 5; H. 427

Chap. 25. To do one's best; to charge.

1. A shield was snatched from a soldier by Cæsar. 2. They **took away** the honor (*honor*) from the standard-bearer, because the standard had been lost (1). 3. From what centurion had a **sword** been taken? 4. Being **crowded together**, we are a **hindrance** (69) to one another (ourselves). 5. There was no reserve[s] that could (155) be **sent up**. 6. He has taken (*ēripiō*) all **hope** from me.

7. The standard had been torn from the standard-bearer. 8. Will the enemy's attack take away Sextius's courage?

Dative of Purpose

A. 382, 1 (233, *a*); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433

Chap. 26. To leave nothing undone.

1. They helped[s] **one another.** 2. One legion acted as (was for) a guard[s] to the rear. 3. He sent the eighth legion as a reinforcement to Labienus. 4. The soldiers do not **fear**[s] being (148) **surrounded.** 5. Labienus chose (*dēligō*) the top of the hill for a camp. 6. Did he not see[s] **what peril** the camp was in (152)? 7. This movement (*rēs*) was of great advantage (*ūsus*) to the legion. 8. The baggage was a danger to the legion.

Dative with Compounds

A. 370 (228); B. 187, iii; G. 347; H. 429

Chap. 27. 1. They put themselves before the cavalry. 2. We shall put ourselves ahead of you. 3. They are men of such valor that (161) they **dare** to rush against all their enemies. 4. The enemy **stood upon** the **corpses** of our men. 5. Those who were exhausted with wounds were leaning upon their **shields** (12). 6. The camp-followers **encountered** men[s] of great valor. 7. The servants were standing on those who had **fallen.**

Causal Clauses with **cum**

A. 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598

Chap. 28. 1. Because the Nervii **surrendered,** Cæsar **bade**[s] them occupy (use, 23) their towns. 2. **Since** the warriors were conquered[s], the **elders** surrendered to

Cæsar. 3. Since they were suppliants, Cæsar had **mercy** on them. 4. Since they have surrendered, I will spare them. 5. There was no obstacle to Cæsar, because the **race** of the Nervii was **reduced** almost[s] to extinction. 6. The women were wretched, inasmuch as they had been placed in the **swamp**.

Order of Words. Emphasis

A. 596 ff. (343 ff.); B. 348 ff.; G. 671 ff.; H. 664 ff.

NOTE. — It would be well to vary the order in some of these sentences to show varying emphasis.

Chap. 29. 1. I have spoken **above** about the Atuatuci. 2. They had come to **help**[s] (69) the Nervii. 3. They (*ille*) had deserted all[s] their towns. 4. There was one town to which they **conveyed** all their goods. 5. Pointed logs were **placed** on the **walls**[s]. 6. That [part of the] baggage train which they could not carry they **drove**. 7. Five **thousand** men (82) were left[s] as a **garrison**. 8. At one time they made (*īnferō*) war; at another time they made (*faciō*) peace.

Ablative of Means or Instrument

A. 409 (248. *c*. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476

Chap. 30. Men[s] of small stature; a tower of great[s] **weight**.

1. Our men enclosed the town with a wall six feet high. 2. The sheds were moved up with a machine. 3. The Gauls **raised** the tower with their hands. 4. The **tower** is an object of ridicule (69) to the Gauls. 5. By what strength[s], pray, did they expect to set up the tower on the wall[s]? 6. They protected (*dēfendō*) themselves with the **bodies** of their own [people]. 7. A mound[s] was **built up** by hand a long distance off.

Dative with Adjectives

A. 383 (234); B. 192; G. 359; H. 434

Chap. 31. 1. Our neighbors[s] are hostile to us. 2. Our enemies[s] are our neighbors (*adj. w. dat.*). 3. The **sight** was strange to the Atuatuci. 4. This **manner** of **speaking** was not acceptable (*grātus*) to the Romans. 5. The Atuatuci were unfriendly to the Romans. 6. One [favor] we **beg**[s]. 7. Cæsar's **power**[s] was offensive (part. of *invideō*) to the Gauls.

Ablative of Accordance

A. 418. *a*, N. (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475

Chap. 32. One-third; in the case of the Nervii.

1. It is more in accordance with Cæsar's **custom**[s] than with your **desert**. 2. The Atuatuci according to their custom **retained** one-third of the arms. 3. In accordance with Cæsar's reply (*respōnsum*) they gave up their arms[s] and opened the gates. 4. If you surrender, you will be spared as you deserve (*use a noun*). 5. According to the terms of **surrender**, they were spared. 6. On what **condition** will you open the gates?

Ablative of Time

A. 423, 1 (256, 1); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487

Chap. 33. By night; towards evening; in the third watch.

1. Why did Cæsar **order**[s] the gates to be shut at dawn (*prīmā lūce*)? 2. The enemy fought[s] (*impers.*) at that **time** as fiercely **as brave** men ought[s] to fight. 3. **There was a rush** to the fortifications in the fourth **watch**. 4. How many (*quot*) men were slain[s] on that day? 5. The soldiers went out of the town **by night**. 6. In

accordance with this **design**, the gates were broken down the next day.

Future Infinitive after Verbs of Promising

A. 580. *c* (330. *f*); B. 331; G. 423. 5

Chaps. 34, 35. For fifteen days; in the beginning of the next summer.

1. They **promised** to return to him the next **summer**. 2. Cæsar promised to set out for Italy. 3. Do you promise to lead the legions to a place **near** Cæsar's **winter quarters**? 4. The states promised to send ambassadors. 5. The Veneti promised to inform Crassus about the **maritime** states[s]. 6. I promise to send one legion, if the embassy returns.

BOOK III

Complementary Infinitive

A. 456 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607, 608

Chaps. 1, 2. To form a plan; moreover, and besides.

1. Cæsar wishes[s] to open a road **over** the Alps. 2. He **determined**[s] to station one legion in those places. 3. Galba orders[s] the messengers to **depart** by night. 4. The village in which they **passed the winter** was called Octodurus. 5. What reason has Cæsar (68) for **proceeding** to Italy? 6. It happened[s] that (163) the Gauls **suddenly**[s] renewed the war. 7. He decided to send another cohort to the river. 8. They tried[s] to withstand our first **assault**. 9. Cæsar is accustomed to pass the winter in Italy.

Clauses of Pure Result. Sequence of Tenses

A. 537, 1, 538 (319); B. 284; G. 552; H. 570. — A. 482–485 (285–287); B. 267, 268; G. 509 ff.; H. 543–545

Chaps. 3, 4. A majority decides; so much danger.

1. Enough has been **accomplished so that** there ought[s] to be no fear of war. 2. There is so much danger that we **despair of** safety. 3. A majority decided to reserve this plan till the last. 4. The **sortie** was made so[s] quickly that there was **hardly** time for giving (93) a signal. 5. Our men at first discharged no (*nūllus*) weapon[s] without effect. 6. They are so few (*paucī*) that they cannot leave[s] the place **where** they **stand**. 7. They could not leave[s] the spot even [when they were] wounded. 8. They were so weary that they could not **withdraw** from the fight. 9. The time was so short that our men could not recover themselves.

Imperative

A. 448 (269); B. 281; G. 266 ff.; H. 560

Chaps. 5, 6. The battle with the Nervii; to the last extremity; the last resource; to entertain the hope.

1. Tear down the **rampart** and fill up the trenches. 2. **Stop** the fight and only pick up the spent weapons. 3. Refresh yourself from **toil**[s]. 4. In the battle[s] with the Nervii, Sextius, a centurion, was **exhausted** with wounds. 5. There is one hope of safety if we make a sortie. 6. Surround the enemy and **slay** them. 7. They were so **affected** by the **lack** of grain that they returned to the province. 8. Ascertain what is **going on**. 9. Out of more[s] than two thousand men one-third were slain[s]. 10. Strip them of their arms and return to camp.

Ablative of Specification

A. 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480

Chaps. 8, 9. As soon as; very different from.

1. They surpassed[s] all the other Gauls in knowledge of naval affairs. 2. Although (*ut*) they are hostages in **name**, they nevertheless **suffer**[s] bondage. 3. The Veneti surpassed[s] the Romans in many respects (things). 4. The influence of the Veneti is very great[s] because they have many **ships**. 5. We had rather (prefer to) **recover** our hostages than **detain** Trebius. 6. The former (*ille*) are stronger in ships, the latter (*hīc*) in men. 7. They have done themselves a great wrong in this **respect**. 8. We do not know where they were going to **wage** war (152). 9. Our neighbors[s] are distinguished in war.

Temporal Clauses with **priusquam**

A. 550, 551 (327); B. 291, 292; G. 574–577; H. 605

Chaps. 10, 11. To be eager for revolution; we may (*licet*) do the same thing.

1. **Before** more[s] states[s] had conspired, he divided the army. 2. Before the Germans had crossed the river, Cæsar sent Labienus with cavalry. 3. All men **desire**[s] **liberty** and hate slavery. 4. Before **such great nations** should **unite**, Cæsar sent Crassus into Aquitania. 5. Before more states should conspire, he **distributed** the army more **widely**. 6. If this **revolt** is **overlooked**, the Morini will **think**[s] they may do the same thing. 7. Crassus set out for Aquitania before **auxiliaries** should be sent to that **region**. 8. Sabinus **took care** that the Venelli should be isolated (127) before he tried[s] to subdue the other[s] nations.

Purpose Clauses with quō

A. 531. 2. *a* (317. *b*); B. 282, *a*; G. 545, 2; H. 568. 7

Chaps. 12, 13. 1. That they might remove their goods the more **easily**, they kept a great **supply** of ships. 2. They carried off their goods before the **tide** ebbed in order that they might **put** them in a safer place. 3. They made anchors, ropes, chains, and sails so that they might have a greater supply for the war. 4. The ships are made flat-bottomed that they may the more safely **rest** on the **shoals**. 5. They are made of oak so that they may the more easily endure[s] **any**[s] **violence** of winds. 6. Since (*cum*) they are made of oak, they cannot be injured (**103**) by our beaks. 7. The Romans made dikes so that they might storm the town at closer quarters.

Indirect Questions

A. 573–575 (210. 2, 234); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649. ii

Chaps. 14, 15. To board a ship; sunset; ten o'clock.

1. Brutus does not know[s] how many (*quot*) towns have been captured. 2. I learned[s] in what vessels the centurions were seen (*videō*). 3. We can **neither** check the enemy's flight **nor** injure them. 4. I know who **is at the head of** the **army**. 5. I have found[s] out who ordered (*imperō*) the soldiers to board the ship. 6. I have **decided** [as to] what **method** of fighting we shall adopt. 7. He asked (*rogō*) who had cut the ropes. 8. The battle raged (*impers.*) from about eight o'clock till four. 9. The Gauls had seen in what direction the wind was blowing. 10. Since they found[s] **no** relief for the situation (*ea rēs*), they **turned** their ships about.

Ablative of Accompaniment

A. 413 (248. *a*); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473, 1

Chaps. 16, 17. For the future; the chief command; a chance to fight.

1. We have no place to **retreat** to (have not whither, etc.). 2. We have no means of defending our towns **unless** we join with the young men. 3. The Veneti must be punished[s] **severely** that (145) with the other[s] barbarians they may observe the rights[s] of ambassadors more carefully. 4. Cæsar with all his troops **arrived** in the **territory** of the Venelli. 5. Viridovix was near (*adsum*) with a large army. 6. They will proceed to camp with the rest[s] of the leaders. 7. Sabinus **was unwilling** to risk an engagement (to **fight**) with a multitude of the enemy.

Temporal Clauses with **postquam, ubi,** etc.

A. 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561–563; H. 602

Chaps. 18, 19. As a **deserter**; it happened that, the result was that.

1. **When** the Gaul came to the enemy's camp, he said that the Romans were hard pressed. 2. When he **told**[s] them this, they all raised a shout. 3. We **generally** are glad to (gladly) believe when we hear what we desire[s]. 4. Sabinus persuaded a certain shrewd man to **go over** to the enemy. 5. Joyfully (40) they will proceed to camp with their arms[s]. 6. It **happened**[s] that a few were left. 7. As soon as the council[s] was **dismissed**, they collected brush and started out. 8. They hastened with great **speed** as soon as they **heard** what was done. 9. There is no time for us to rally (cf. *minimum . . . coniigendōs*).

10. After the enemy had turned in flight, our men followed them up.

Genitive with Adjectives

A. 349 (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 ff.

Chaps. 20, 21. To be very strong.

1. The Aquitani are skilful in other[s] things. 2. He is very well **skilled** (*superl.*) in this thing. 3. They were desirous (*cupidus*) of the safety of Aquitania. 4. Where had the army of Valerius been **defeated**[s]? 5. When (*ubi*) he had arrived there (**whither** when, etc.) he used extraordinary **diligence**. 6. Auxiliaries and cavalry were procured (37). 7. The mines were full (*plēnus*) of water (*aqua*). 8. Cæsar, relying upon the auxiliaries (9), **besieged** the town. 9. The Romans are unacquainted (neg. of *perītus*) with copper mines. 10. The army[s] of Crassus, experienced in **ambuscades**, **valiantly opposed** the Sotiates. 11. The young man was not acquainted with the place where he stationed his troops.

Conditional Sentences. Second form

A. 516. 2, *b*, *c* (307. 2, *b*, *c*); B. 303; G. 596; H. 576, 577

Chaps. 22, 23. To commit suicide; a **sufficient** guard[s]; daily.

1. If **anything**[s] should happen[s] to you, I should not refuse to die (death). 2. If a sortie should be made, they would be **driven back**. 3. The town will be taken in a few days. 4. These devoted followers were called *soldurii*. 5. If he should summon[s] auxiliaries from Aquitania, the number of the enemy would **increase**. 6. If this fact should be **reported** to the council, all would **feel** the same. 7. The barbarians [although] alarmed at the **approach** of Crassus, **nevertheless** attempted[s] to **procure** troops. 8. If

all should agree, they would risk a decisive **battle**. 9. If your **leader** were to die (*morior*), would you commit suicide?

Clauses of Pure Purpose

A. 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568, 590

Chaps. 24–26. Late at night; what plan? one-quarter.

1. They attacked[s] us when **hampered** by our knapsacks in order that we might not get away. 2. The enemy fight[s] steadily **so that** their weapons may not fall without effect (in vain[s]). 3. Our horsemen were led around in order that they might **be seen**[s] by the **enemy**. 4. The enemy thought[s] that they could **gain** a victory by blockading the **roads** (1). 5. If they should hear the **shout** in that direction, they would fight more boldly. 6. They will be led around lest they be seen. 7. They demolished the walls before the enemy **found**[s] **out** (178) what was **going on**. 8. He will hasten to the gate in order that the Aquitani may know[s] what plan[s] to **follow**. 9. Tell[s] me what you wish[s] done lest there be a scarcity of provisions.

Ablative Absolute denoting Time

A. 419, 420; B. 227; G. 409, 410; H. 489

Chaps. 27–29. In a very different way from.

1. After great nations had been **overcome**[s], the Morini **withdrew** into the forests. 2. When **winter** has passed, summer will be at hand. 3. Our men, **taking** their arms, drove the enemy back. 4. Having made an attack upon our men, the enemy[s] was driven back. 5. Cæsar cuts down the woods that no (lest **any**) attack may be made after peace delegates have been sent. 6. When the war was **finished**, the winter quarters were located in the **villages** of the Aulerci.

BOOK IV

Accusative of Extent and Duration

A. 423–425 (256, 257); B. 181; G. 335, 336; H. 417

Chaps. 1–3. From childhood; for the most part.

1. We stayed at home (120) two years. 2. They will stay a **year** in one place. 3. For **very many** years the Suevi had harassed the Usipetes. 4. The latter **stayed** at home, the former were under (*in*) arms. 5. The **boys** were not trained to any duty. 6. They did nothing against their **will**. 7. On account[s] of daily exercise (5) they became men of extraordinary (greatest) **power**[s] (17). 8. The Gauls took particular delight in horses. 9. But the Germans used **small** and ill-shaped [ones]. 10. Their lands are unoccupied for five hundred miles. 11. It was considered disgraceful to import wine. 12. For a considerable (*maximus*) part of the winter they have hides for (*prō*) clothing. 13. He remained not far from the Rhine his whole[s] **life**.

Genitive with Verbs of Feeling or Emotion

A. 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457

Chaps. 4–6. Finally; on the spot; to form a plan.

1. He **formed** a plan that he repented of on the spot. 2. Do they repent of their **schemes**? 3. Are they not sorry for this custom? 4. The Usipetes wandered about in Germany for three years. 5. The army **advanced** a three days' **journey**. 6. They finished the march in one night (21). 7. Do you not pity (*miseret*) the Germans? 8. They were informed that their villages had been seized. 9. No confidence should be placed in (nothing should be

intrusted to) the Gauls. 10. They ask[s] travellers what they know[s] about **everything**. 11. They are not ashamed (*pudet*) of these plans[s]. 12. We pitied the states which had **invited** the Germans to cross the Rhine.

Dative of Possessor

A. 373 (231) ; B. 190 ; G. 349 ; H. 430

Chaps. 7–9. The next day but one ; several days before.

1. I could have no friendship with you, if you should remain (54) in Gaul. 2. They did not refuse to contend[s] (*subjv.*, 164), if they were **provoked**. 3. Nor were they the first (*adj.*) to **make** war upon others[s]. 4. They resisted anybody that (those **whoever**) made war on them. 5. **Either** assign **lands** to us **or** allow[s] us to hold those that we possess. 6. Did not the Germans repent of their **plea**? 7. We are the **only** ones who are (155) equal to the immortal gods. 8. There is no one to whom we are not equal. 9. The Ubii have lands in Gaul. 10. I have friends at home. 11. If you wish[s], you may **settle** among the Ubii. 12. Have you no friendship with them? 13. We shall have no reason for delay.

Concessive Clauses with cum

A. 549 (313. *d*) ; B. 309. 3 ; G. 587 ; H. 598

Chaps. 10–12. 1. On that day he advanced more than five miles, although the enemy were not far off. 2. Here (**hither**) they assembled the next day but one, although Cæsar had asked[s] them to **proceed**. 3. There were some of these (*rel.*) nations that subsisted on fish and birds' eggs. 4. **Although** you are **wounded**, nevertheless (*tamen*) do not **stop** your flight. 5. Although the number of your

cavalry was more than four thousand (*gen.*), still the enemy made an attack upon them. 6. Although they were seeking[s] for a truce, they killed sixty-four of our men. 7. Although our men feared[s] nothing, they were nevertheless **quickly thrown into disorder**.

Temporal Clauses with dum (until)

A. 553, N.2 (328); B. 293. iii, 1, 2; G. 571, 572; H. 603. ii, 1, 2

Chaps. 13, 14. Elders; it is the height of folly; whether . . . or . . . or; contrary to what; no time (room).

1. Cæsar ordered[s] the **chiefs** to be held **until** a battle should be [fought]. 2. It is very foolish to wait until the enemy form their plans[s]. 3. Although (*cum*) the chiefs came as (*prō*) ambassadors, Cæsar detained them until they set a day for the battle[s]. 4. It was doubtful (*dubius*) **whether** it was better to do this **or** that (150, 152). 5. It was the height of folly (79) to wait until the quæstors should return. 6. He will arrive at the camp before (*priusquam*, 178) we can **tell** what is doing. 7. Cæsar will **follow** them **up** until they are **thoroughly frightened**. 8. The cavalry will not return until they know[s] where the children[s] are.

Causal Clauses with quod, etc.

A. 540 (321); B. 286; G. 539–542; H. 588

Chaps. 15, 16. 1. They **cast** themselves into the river because they were **overwhelmed** with fear. 2. They wish[s] to remain with Cæsar because they fear[s] **punishment** from (of) the Gauls. 3. Is it better (*praestāre*) to send **messengers** or to give hostages (150)? 4. They left their **standards** (*abl. abs.*) and rushed out of camp. 5. Cæsar

thought[s] he must finish the German war because the Germans were easily **influenced** to come into Gaul. 6. The Germans feared for their own **interests** because the Romans were able to cross the Rhine. 7. They thought it was not **fair** for Cæsar to cross the Rhine, because that river set bounds to the **sway** of the Roman people. 8. The Ubii beg[s] for aid because they are hard pressed by the Suevi.

Ablative of Means or Instrument

A. 409 (248. *c.* 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476

Chaps. 17, 18. The (more) . . . the (more); in ten days after; from the time when.

1. To cross the Rhine in **boats** was not consistent with Cæsar's dignity (84). 2. Therefore he had to **build** a bridge. 3. The timbers were driven with pile drivers. 4. The bridge was held firmly together by the force of the current. 5. The barbarians were not able to injure the work with trunks of trees and boats. 6. Cæsar **diminished** the force of these things with piles. 7. The **whole work** was **completed** in ten days after it **began**[s] to be built. 8. The beams were fastened with ties so that (145) the strength of the **structure** might be greater. 9. Cæsar left[s] a guard[s] at the bridge so that the Germans might not **break** it **down**.

Indirect Discourse. Tenses of the Infinitive

A. 579 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 508, 2, 648 ff.; H. 641 ff.
A. 486, 584 (288, 336, A); B. 270, 317; G. 281, 530, 531; H. 617-620

Chaps. 19, 20. 1. Cæsar found[s] out that all who could (*subjv.*, 109) **bear** arms were assembling. 2. I think it will be of the greatest **advantage** (69) to me if I **visit**

Britain. 3. After (*posteāquam*, **181**) the Suevi had learned[s] that Cæsar was building a bridge, they **sent** messengers in all directions. 4. Remove from your towns and put all your possessions in the woods. 5. Cæsar thought[s] that he could learn[s] from **traders** what the **size** of the **island** was. 6. He summoned[s] traders to him to find out what **harbors** there were. 7. We know that none **but** traders visit the island. 8. When he ascertained that all the Suevi had abandoned their towns, he considered that he had avenged[s] the Ubii.

Relative Clauses of Cause or Reason

A. 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592

Chaps. 21, 22. As soon as possible; transports; galleys; whatever (of) ships.

1. Cæsar sent Volusenus, who was a **capable** man, to ascertain the facts (these things). 2. The **influence** of Commius **among** the Atrebates is regarded [as] of great value (85). 3. I will **examine** the places, as far as **opportunity** is offered me, seeing that I dare not go ashore (out of the ship). 4. Volusenus did not **visit** the states because he was unwilling to **trust** himself to barbarians. 5. Commius also (*quoque*) was sent because he was loyal to Cæsar. 6. Faithful are you who consider my authority great. 7. The horseman who returns first will be greatly esteemed.

Dative of Agent

A. 374 (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431

Chaps. 23, 24. To embark; to disembark; at anchor; military science; seamanship; promptly.

1. The Romans had to jump down from the ships with their hands encumbered. 2. The Britons had to advance

a **little** into the water. 3. Our men, **weighed down** by their armor, had to keep their footing amid (*in*) the waves. 4. It was by no means a suitable place for **disembarking** where weapons could be thrown from the heights to the shore. 5. Cæsar decided[s] that he must wait till the **wind** and tide were **favorable**. 6. The enemy, on the other hand (*autem*), with their limbs **free**, could **hurl** weapons from dry [ground]. 7. The vessels of the cavalry must[s] wait at anchor. 8. The infantry will have to disembark.

Imperfect of Customary or Repeated Action

A. 470 (277); B. 260, 2; G. 231, 233; H. 534. 3

Chaps. 25, 26. To retreat; to do one's duty; on the **exposed flank**; to reach ("make") the island.

1. We could not follow our own standards, but we flocked to any that (*whatever*) we **came across**. 2. The enemy would surround our men as they came (coming) out of the ships in scattered groups. 3. Skiffs were filled with soldiers and sent as a relief[s] to those **in distress**. 4. **If** you do **not** wish[s] to be **frightened** by the heavy missiles, fall back just a little. 5. If you do not jump down out of the ships, you will betray the eagle to the barbarians. 6. Heavy missiles were [continually] thrown to dislodge the enemy. 7. Draw away the transports from the galleys and **put** them **in motion** with oars. 8. Our soldiers **kept hesitating**. 9. The Romans were not in the habit of betraying the eagle to the enemy.

Ablative of Separation

A. 400–402 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 461–465

Chaps. 27–30. As soon as; three days after; to confer together; to renew the war.

1. The storm was **so great** that they were driven from their course. 2. They keep[s] our men from supplies. 3. They cut off their return (them from return). 4. As soon as (181) Commius had gone ashore, he was **arrested**. 5. **Some** of the vessels were driven back to the place they had started from (**whence** they, etc.), and some **cast** anchor. 6. It happened[s] that Cæsar did not know[s] that the full moon **causes** very high tides. 7. So great is the panic in (of) our army that the Britons are renewing the war. 8. **It was evident** that the ships were useless for sailing when their rigging was lost. 9. The **best** thing to do (177) is to keep them from supplies. 10. Cæsar sailed away from the harbor. 11. The Britons **withdrew** their men from the **fields**.

Ablative of Place

A. 426. 1, 2, 3 (258, *c*, 1); B. 228, 229; G. 385–391; H. 461, 462, 483, 485

Chaps. 31–34. Some new plan; a little too far; in that direction; in all directions; greater than usual; for several days in succession.

1. They saw[s] a larger[s] cloud of dust than usual in that **direction** in which (*acc.*) the legion was marching. 2. While (*dum*, 73) our men were **engaged** in reaping, the Britons, who were skulking in the woods, attacked[s] them. 3. At first they would ride (100) around in all directions and then (*deinde*) work their way in among the horsemen. 4. Then they would leap down from their chariots and the drivers would withdraw **from** the battle. 5. They had to (use *necesse*) use the timber (23) of the disabled ships for **repairing** the others[s]. 6. Cæsar had **halted** in that place. 7. For several days in succession the enemy were **prevented**[s] by storms from [offering]

battle. 8. There is a great opportunity to free (92) our country forever, if we **drive** the Romans out of the island. 9. A large number of the soldiers who had been reaping were slain in this battle.

Concessive Clauses with **etsī**

A. 527, *c* (313, *c*); B. 309; G. 604; H. 585

Chaps. 35–38. To set sail; to give battle.

1. **Although** the enemy could escape danger by their **rapidity**, nevertheless we gave battle. 2. Although the Morini had been subdued, they were induced by hope of **booty** to renew the war. 3. Although we set sail at **midnight**, we nevertheless reached port **in safety** (*adj.*). 4. Although they did not wish[s] to be killed[s], they did not lay down their arms. 5. Although they defend themselves by forming a circle, they will be killed. 6. We have **no** place to retreat to (**whither** we may retreat) (155). 7. The year before, the Morini had used the swamps as a place of refuge. 8. Although only two states had sent hostages, the senate voted a thanksgiving.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

NOTE. — Figures in parentheses denote chapters. A superior figure (*e.g.* years[1]) put after a word applies to that word alone; put before a word, applies to two or more immediately following. A superior s (*e.g.* lived[s]) is a reference to the Table of Synonyms, p. 263. In the notes literal translations and idioms are printed in *italics;* the numbers refer to the Grammatical Index, p. 135, unless otherwise specified. Cf. = compare; w. = with; other abbreviations will be readily understood.

BOOK I

(1) The Helvetians were very brave because they lived[s] in a part of Gaul which was remote from the province, and also because they were continually warring with the Germans. (2) Their most influential man was Orgetorix, who, three years[1] before Cæsar's arrival, had persuaded his people [2]that it would be very easy for them to go forth and possess all Gaul. It was easier to persuade them because they were dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their own territory. (3) Two years they considered enough [3]for all preparations; they determined to depart on the third year.

[4]In the meantime Orgetorix had determined to get the supreme power[s] in his own state[s], (4) and a spy[5] had betrayed[6] him to the Helvetians. When he knew[s] that the state would maintain its authority, he committed suicide. (5) In spite of this the Helvetians determined

[1] Abl., 7. [2] Substantive clause of purpose, 147. [3] *For preparing all things;* gerundive with ad. [4] Interim. [5] Index. [6] Prōdō.

to emigrate when they were[1] ready. [2]They made an alliance with their neighbors[s], burned[3] all their buildings and all their grain except three months' rations for each one and were ready to set out.

(6) On the appointed[s] day they assembled near the Rhone that they might cross into the territory of the Allobroges [4]because this was the better way[s].

(7) Cæsar hastened from Rome to Geneva and cut down the bridge. The ambassadors of the Helvetians declared that they intended to march through the province without doing[5] any harm. Cæsar, however, said that he would take time[6] to consider the matter. (8) In the meantime he [7]fortified the bank of the Rhone and [8]refused to let[s] them pass through the province. The Helvetians, nevertheless, [9]tried[s] to cross by force and [9]were driven back and (9) obliged to go out by the one way[10] left them between Mt. Jura and the river Rhone. Through the mediation of Dumnorix they obtained[s] permission to pass[11] through the territory of the Sequanians (10) and thence into the land of the Santones.

Cæsar knew[12] that such warlike men would be dangerous neighbors[s] [13]and so he hastened[14] to increase[15] his force by drafting[16] two new legions in Italy and by calling[16] forth three from winter quarters.

(11) He was informed [17]a little later by the Hæduans [18]that they and their relatives could not defend themselves from the injuries[19] of the Helvetians. The Allob-

[1] Subjv. [2] Use two abl. abs. clauses. [3] Part. agreeing with two nouns, **37**. [4] See **49**. [5] Omit. [6] Not **tempus**. [7] Abl. abs. [8] Compare **negat sē**, etc. [9] Participle. [10] See **22**. [11] Not infinitive. [12] A **cum**-clause. [13] Omit "and so." [14] **Properō**. [15] **Augeō**. [16] Gerundive. [17] **Paulō post, 7**. [18] Indir. disc. [19] **Iniūria**.

roges also flee to him [1]to ask[s] for help. Moved by these considerations[2] Cæsar decided[s] (12) to attack the Helvetians, who had already led three divisions of their army across the Arar. The remaining[3] division was surprised and cut to pieces before[4] the others[s] (13) could help them and Cæsar built a bridge and crossed the river. The Helvetians then sent an embassy to him, for which Divico spoke as follows: —

"If you will make peace with us, we will go and remain where you wish[s]. If you make war upon us, we will fight[s] as we have learned from our ancestors."

(14) Cæsar replied that he remembered their former lawless acts and that they were too much puffed up thereby[5]; [6]they must make reparation for the injuries they had done and give hostages. The Helvetians answered that they were not accustomed to give hostages, and went away.

(15) For the next fifteen days Cæsar follows the enemy at a distance of five or six miles and prevents them from foraging and pillage.

(16) [7]When Cæsar observed that the grain which the Hæduans had promised[s] was not being collected, he summoned[s] their leading men and reproached them because when the enemy was so near they had abandoned[9] him.

(17) He was told by Liscus and others that the common people were prevented by the harangues[10] of the magistrates [11]from collecting the grain; (18) that Dumnorix, who hated[s] the Romans, was a man of great daring[12] and

[1] Render in three ways. [2] *Things.* [3] *Fourth.* [4] See 178. [5] Use a form of is. [6] Second periph. conj. [7] Use this order, *Cæsar, when he*, etc. [8] Subjv. in ind. disc., 109. [9] Subjv. w. quod denoting reason "on another's authority," 49. [10] Sing. [11] Cf. nē cōnferant. [12] Abl. of quality, 17.

desirous of a revolution, and that he commanded the cavalry in the unsuccessful skirmish [1]which happened a few days before.

(19) Because of these things Cæsar thought that either he or the state should punish[s] him; but he was moved by the entreaties[2] of his brother Diviciacus, a man of great good-will, fidelity, and loyalty toward the Romans. (20) He therefore summoned Dumnorix, told him what he knew[s][3] about him, and, having advised him [4]to avoid all grounds of suspicion in the future, he pardoned him for his brother's sake.

(21) On the same day Cæsar sent Considius with scouts to ascertain what the design of the enemy was.[3] (22) [5]The latter, [6]not knowing[s] that Labienus held the mountain, reported to Cæsar that it was held by the enemy. Late in the day Cæsar learned that Considius was panic-stricken and had made a false report.

(23) Since [7]the time was now at hand when he ought to distribute grain to the army, Cæsar for the sake[s] of supplies left the route[s] which the Helvetians were following. Thereupon [8]they turned and began to attack the Romans. (24) Cæsar sent cavalry [9]to hold the enemy in check while he [10]was drawing up his army in line[s] of battle. The Helvetians quickly drew[11] their swords and advanced.

(25) In the battle which followed, the Romans with their javelins pierced through and pinned together the enemies' shields so that their left arms were shackled; the Helvetians then threw away their shields and fought

[1] Use participle. [2] Precēs. [3] Subjv.; why? [4] Not inf. [5] Hīc or ille? [6] *Since he did not know.* [7] Follow the text. [8] Participle [9] Subjv., 164. [10] Subjv. by attraction, 168. [11] Dēstringō.

without protection. (26) [1]The fight continued till late at night, but finally[2] the enemy were conquered[s] and many thousands fled. Cæsar delayed three days to bury the dead and then started in pursuit.

(27) The fugitives in despair sued for peace. While they were collecting the arms and hostages which Cæsar had demanded[s], about five thousand left the camp, (28) but they were brought back and put to death. When he had received the rest in surrender he said, [3]"Return to your homes and rebuild your villages, but let the Boii be settled in the Hæduan territory."

(29) In this war of the Helvetians two hundred and fifty-eight thousand were either[s] [4]lost or slain. (30) Because of this victory the leading men of Gaul said to Cæsar that the war with the Helvetians would prove an advantage to Gaul and [5]they asked[s] Cæsar's permission to hold a council[s], in which Diviciacus spoke as follows[s]: —

(31) [6]One of the two parties in[7] Gaul had invited the Germans to cross the Rhine; these had conquered the Hæduans and had then seized a large part of the land of the Sequanians. The headstrong and cruel king of the Germans they could not resist longer, and unless the Roman people helped[s] them, [9]they would be obliged to leave[s] their homes[s].

(32) The Sequanians alone did none of the things that the others[s] did, not even asking[s] Cæsar for aid[s]. The reason for this[10] was that they were wholly[11] in the power

[1] *It was fought.* [2] Dēnique. [3] Render also in ind. disc. after dīxit; see 110. [4] Amittō and occīdō. [5] *They asked Cæsar that it might be permitted to them.* [6] Render in ind. disc. [7] *Of.* [8] Pluperf. subjv.; see 58. [9] Second periph. conj. [10] *Which thing.* [11] Adj.

of Ariovistus, [1]whose cruelty they dreaded even when he was absent.

(33) It seemed disgraceful under such a rule [as that] of the Romans that men [2]who had been called[s] brothers by the senate [3]should be annoyed by Ariovistus, who, [4]if he should lead a great number of men across the Rhine, would occupy all Gaul.

(34) Wherefore Cæsar requested[s] Ariovistus to treat with him about [5]matters of the highest interest to both; but he [6]demurred and said that he did not know what business[7] Cæsar had in Gaul anyhow. (35) When Cæsar declared[s] that he would defend his allies, (36) Ariovistus retorted that he had made the Hæduans tributaries; that as for Cæsar's attempting[s] to dictate how [8]he should exercise his rights, he would not contend with him, [9]except to his own destruction[s].

(37) [10]This reply and the attempt of a hundred cantons of Suevi to invade Gaul disturbed Cæsar very much and he determined to oppose Ariovistus at once[s]. (38) He first[s] seized Vesontio, a town so[s] situated that it afforded the greatest opportunity [11]for successful warfare.

(39) Here the soldiers became panic-stricken because certain traders had said that the Germans were men of prodigious valor.[12] Some were so frightened that they made their wills, and some said that they would not obey when Cæsar ordered[13] the army to advance.

(40) Cæsar immediately[s] called a council of the centurions and upbraided them severely because they at-

[1] *Of whom absent*, etc. [2] Use the participle. [3] Vexō. [4] See 54. [5] *Highest things of both*. [6] Part. of gravor. [7] See 82. [8] Be careful in the use of the pronouns in this sentence. [9] *Without*. [10] Plural. [11] Not dative. [12] See 17. [13] Pluperf. subjv., 109.

tempted[8] to dictate to him. "I am confident," said[8] he, "that Ariovistus will not fail in his duty; but if he does,[1] [2]why should you despair of your own bravery or of my ability? I know that the tenth legion [3]in which I have the greatest confidence will never inquire in what direction I lead them, but will follow me even if nobody else does."

(41) Moved by this address, Cæsar's soldiers apologized to him and assured him that they would carry on the war with the greatest alacrity. About the fourth watch, as Cæsar had said, he advanced against[4] Ariovistus. (42) As Cæsar drew near, ambassadors were sent to and fro between them and (43) a day was appointed for a conference; to this[5] [6]each took ten horsemen.

Cæsar at the outset mentioned the great favor [7]shown by the senate to Ariovistus. He showed[8] that the Romans had always desired[8] their allies to grow strong and influential; Ariovistus must therefore[8] return the hostages to the Hæduans [9]and must not permit[8] any[8] more Germans to cross the Rhine.

(44) Ariovistus replied that Gaul was his because he had come there before the Romans [did]. If Cæsar should interfere with his taxes, he would spurn the friendship of the Romans. Indeed he could win the favor of many influential Romans by killing[8] Cæsar.

(45) Cæsar replied that he could not desert his most deserving allies; [10]there was no doubt that the rights[11] of the Romans in Gaul were well grounded, and besides, the senate wished[8] Gaul to be free.

[1] *Shall fail.* [2] Delib. subjv., 170. [3] Cf. **huic legiōnī . . . maximē.** [4] **Not contrā.** [5] *Which.* [6] *Ten each* (distrib.). [7] *Of.* [8] *For which reason.* [9] Use **neve.** [10] **nōn dubium esse quīn.** [11] **Iūs,** sing.

(46) Since Ariovistus [1]had acted so haughtily and his horsemen were beginning to ride up nearer to Cæsar, the latter[2] broke off the conference; (47) the former,[3] however, [4]asked for another conference. Cæsar [5]refused to expose himself again[s] to such savages, but he sent two ambassadors who [6]spoke the German language fluently. These[7] were imprisoned by Ariovistus.

(48) For five days in succession Cæsar gave[8] Ariovistus an opportunity to fight, but (49) he remained in camp. (50) The cause of this[9] was that[10] they thought they could not conquer before the new moon. (51) On the next day when Cæsar had marched against their camp, the Germans of necessity joined battle. (52) The two lines charged so swiftly that the javelins could not be thrown. Although the enemy fought bravely, they were put to flight, because Crassus sent reinforcements to the right wing.

(53) Ariovistus himself escaped, but one of his two daughters and both of his wives were slain[s]. (54) Because of this victory the other[s] Germans who were about to invade Gaul, fled home[s] [11]in terror; and thus Cæsar finished two great wars in one summer.

BOOK II

(1) Next[12] the Belgians join in a conspiracy because the Roman army was wintering in Gaul and they feared[s] [13]that it would be led against them. (2) Cæsar did not

[1] *Had used such* (tālis) *haughtiness.* [2] Hīc. [3] Ille. [4] *Asked a conference again.* [5] *Denied that he would.* [6] *Used . . . much.* [7] *Who.* [8] *Made.* [9] *This thing.* [10] Quod, 175. [11] *Terrified.* [12] Deinde. [13] See 148.

hesitate [1]to march into their territory as soon as he had learned[s] what [2]was going on.

(3) Iccius, the envoy of the Remi, said[s] to Cæsar, "We are ready to receive you [3]into our towns, but all the other[s] Belgians are conspiring against you. (4) We have ascertained[s] [4]how many thousand armed men each tribe [2]has promised[s] for the war. The whole number of soldiers is three hundred and thirty-six thousand, and the chief command has been given to Galba, king of the Bellovaci."

(5) Straightway Cæsar told Diviciacus [5]that it was for the interest [6]of the state [7]to keep the forces of the Belgians apart, and then sent him into their territory [8]to destroy their crops. He himself crossed the Axona so that he might have the river behind him, and there he encamped (6) [9]eight miles from Bibrax. The enemy [10]tried to take this town by assault, but it held out bravely until evening.

(7) That night, [11]on account of the help[s] sent by Cæsar, the enemy [12]abandoned the siege and advanced against him. (8) [13]Having tested his men in a cavalry skirmish, he pitched his camp on a hill [14]which rose gradually from the plain, and drew up his forces in line[s] of battle. (9) The enemy, however, did not cross the marsh which was in front of the camp, but tried[s] to ford the stream. (10) Some[15] were slain in the river, others[15] were surrounded by the cavalry and hope failed them. Just at this time they learned [5]that Diviciacus was threatening

[1] See 164. [2] Ind. quest., 152. [3] Note the Latin idiom. [4] Quot. [5] Ind. disc. [6] See 87. [7] See 115. [8] Express in three ways. [9] See 29. [10] See 101. [11] Two ways. [12] Follow the text. [13] Remember that the perfect part. of a deponent verb has an active meaning. [14] Participle. [15] Aliī . . . aliī.

their own boundaries, and they all (11) in great confusion hastened home. Cæsar pursued them and, although[1] they fought[s] bravely, a great number were slain[s]. (12) The Suessiones fled to Noviodunum, which place Cæsar at once[s] proceeded to storm[s]. The town was fortified with a wall[s] and ditch, but the Gauls begged for mercy, because they were frightened by the *agger* and the other things which the Romans used.

(13) Straightway the Bellovaci also sent their elders to seek peace from Cæsar. (14) Diviciacus interceded for them. "The leaders in this affair[2] have fled to Britain, [3]because they know[s] how much harm they have done the state. [4]If you will be merciful to us, you will increase your prestige among all the Belgians."

(15) Cæsar spared them for the sake of Diviciacus and marched into the land of the Nervii. These men, very brave and fierce, would not yield to the Roman people, (16) but with their neighbors were waiting to engage him in battle. (17) They thought[s] that it [5]would not be difficult to rout the first legion while hampered with their packs and with the large[s] baggage train.

(18) The Nervii had selected as a place for their camp[6] a hill wooded on the upper part, where they had hidden. (19) [7]When they saw the first[s] of our baggage train, they suddenly[s] rushed forth from the woods in full force[s]. (20) In this battle[s] the Roman soldiers were much embarrassed on account[s] of the quickness of the enemy[s] Many of [9]the former were busy[10] [11]fortifying the camp,

[1] **Etsī.** [2] Genitive. [3] Not the reason of the writer. [4] See 53. [5] *Nothing of trouble would be to*, etc. [6] See 69. [7] Abl. abs. [8] Abl. of accompaniment without **cum**. [9] **Ille.** [10] **Occupātus** as adj. [11] **In** with gerundive.

and not a few were a [1]considerable distance away. (21) Cæsar urged them [2]to remember their former valor, and bravely sustain the enemy's charge. (22) The army[s] could not be arranged as the methods of military science required, because the character of the ground[3] was such [4]that the view was obstructed by hedges; nor could Cæsar alone give all[s] the necessary orders.

(23) The centre and left wing of Cæsar's army routed their adversaries, but the Nervii in compact array threatened the right wing and the camp itself. (24) The cavalry and auxiliaries fled in all directions, and the Treveri hastened home.

(25) [5]While these things were going on, Cæsar found[s] that many [6]of the centurions on the right wing had been slain[s], the standard had been lost, and that the [7]situation was so critical that the case was already desperate. [8]Seizing a shield [9]from one of his soldiers, he rushed into the front of the line that he might encourage his men and check the attack of the enemy. (26) Straightway all, when they saw what was going on, [10]made all possible haste.

(27) When all, even slaves, cavalry, and wounded, had rushed into the combat, the enemy were reduced to [11]desperate straits. Although many perished, the survivors fought from their bodies as from a rampart; but at length (28) the Nervii were well-nigh destroyed and their fighting men reduced to [12]a very small number. They there-

[1] Superl. of **longē**. [2] Purpose clause. [3] *Place*. [4] See **161**. [5] See **73**. [6] Omit "of the." [7] Compare **rem in angustō**. [8] Note that in Latin this does not agree with the subject of the sentence; use abl. abs. [9] See **71**. [10] Find the idiom in the text. [11] *Last hope* or *last things*; cf. with chap. 25. [12] **Perpaucī**.

fore begged[s][1] that he would spare them and also that he [2]would defend them from their neighbors[s].

(29) The Atuatuci also, who had come [3]to help[s] the Nervii, withdrew into a town which had[4] high precipices on all sides. (30) Cæsar constructed at a distance from the town a high tower which the townsmen[5], who thought[s] the Romans could not move it, ridiculed. (31) But[s] when it [6]began to move, in great terror they declared[s] that they yielded wholly to Cæsar's power[s], because he certainly was waging[7] war with divine aid[s]. (32) Cæsar replied that [8]they must give up their arms[s] if they wished[s][9] to have peace. They accordingly threw a great quantity of arms into the moat, but [10]retained a part of them, and, (33) as a last resort, made a sortie in the night. The Romans quickly [11]set signal fires, rushed upon the enemy, slew four thousand men, and drove the rest[s] into the town. (34) At the same time Crassus informed Cæsar that he[12] had brought all the states bordering on the ocean under the control of the Roman people. (35) [13]Because of these achievements, all Gaul was at peace.

BOOK III

(1) A small army [10]under the command of Galba was sent into the Alps [14]to open the road[s] and to winter there [15]if necessary[s]. When Galba had decided[s] to winter in Octodurus[16], his cohorts fortified one part of the village,

[1] **Petō.** [2] Follow the text. [3] Use the dat., **69.** [4] Tense? [5] The Latin word is from **oppidum.** [6] Imperf. pass. [7] Subjv.; why? [8] Second periph. conj. [9] Subjv., **58.** [10] Abl. abs. [11] *Made signals with fire.* [12] Not **is.** [13] **Propter.** [14] Not inf. [15] Subjv. by attraction, **168.** [16] See **120.**

and the other part, across the stream, was assigned to the Gauls. (2) These suddenly[s] left[s] the village and took a position on the heights from which they might easily charge[1] down and overwhelm the legion. (3) [2]When a council[s] had been called, a [3]majority of the Romans decided that they must not despair but must defend the camp.

(5) [4]After fighting for six hours the Romans determined[s] to make a sortie and so for a short time they stopped fighting to rest themselves. (6) At the given signal they rushed forth and scattered their foes. [5]Although a third part of the enemy had been slain[s], Galba withdrew among the Allobroges [6]for the winter.

(8) Next[7] a war arose among the Veneti, the most powerful of the tribes bordering upon the ocean, [8]because they were unwilling to lose[9] their liberty. They informed[10] Crassus that [11]he must return their hostages.

(9) Because[s] of the nature of their territory and their great supply of vessels and knowledge of their use, they believed that the Romans would not remain long among them. (10) Cæsar, on the other hand, thought[s] that [11]he must undertake this war because he feared[s] [12]that, [2]if he should overlook their affronts, other nations would think they might do the same as[13] the Veneti; (11) and so he sent lieutenants with troops to keep the bands of the Gauls apart, and he himself hastened against the Veneti.

(12) He soon found[s] that their towns, situated on points of land, afforded no approach except[14] by vessels,

[1] See 146. [2] Abl. abs. [3] *It pleased*, etc. [4] A **cum**-clause. [5] Render in two ways. [6] *That he might winter there.* [7] **Deinde**. [8] The reason of the Veneti, 49. [9] **Dēperdō**. [10] **Certiōrem facere**. [11] Second periph. conj. [12] See 148. [13] *And*. [14] **Nisi**.

and that [1]after a town had been captured[2] with great effort, all [10]the inhabitants could sail away to another[s].

(13) The vessels of the Veneti were of such strength[s] that [3]they could not be injured by the beaks of our ships, and their height was so great that it was difficult to hurl missiles upon them. (14) Nevertheless by means of sharpened hooks attached to long poles the ropes which fastened the yards to the masts were cut and the yards fell. Then the Romans (15) boarded[4] the ships one at a time and overpowered[s] the Gauls. The latter hastened to flee, but a calm suddenly[s] came on, and they could not leave the spot. (16) The Romans captured almost[s] all the vessels, and the Veneti, who had lost all means of defending themselves, surrendered to Cæsar.

(17) While these things were going on, the Venelli [5]under the leadership of Viridovix offered battle to Sabinus. He, however, did not think he ought[s] to fight[s] in the absence of the general.

(18) He then persuaded a shrewd Gaul[6] to go over to the enemy as a deserter and tell[s] them that the Romans were afraid[s] and would abandon their camp that very night and escape[7] if they could. When they heard this, they cried out, "[8]We must proceed at[s] once to Sabinus's camp." (19) When they arrived there they were exhausted, and [9]not being able to bear even the first charge of the Romans, but[10] few escaped.

(20) At the same time, Crassus was collecting forces from the province with which to make war upon the Sotiates. (21) These people, because the safety of Aquitania

[1] Do in two ways. [2] **Expūgnō**. [3] See 103. [4] Imperf. of repeated action, 100. [5] Abl. abs. [6] See 72. [7] **Effugiō**. [8] See 171. [9] A **cum**-clause. [10] Omit.

depended[1] upon their valor, fought[s] long[s] and fiercely, but were conquered[s] and laid down their arms.

(23) The other Aquitanians, alarmed by the victory of the Romans, send ambassadors in all directions and gather troops. Veterans[2] from the forces of Sertorius were chosen as leaders because they understood[s] the Roman method of warfare. The number of the enemy rapidly increased. Crassus determined to attack the next day (24) at dawn. Although[3] the enemy were confident that they could gain a victory, they remained in camp, and Crassus advanced against them. (25) When the battle had raged a long[s] time horsemen who had ridden around the camp reported that there was an easy entrance at the rear.[4] (26) Fresh cohorts that were sent around by a long route[s] broke down the wall and stood in the camp before the enemy realized[5] what was going on. In despair they leaped[6] over the fortifications and sought safety in flight. Out of their whole number hardly twelve thousand survived.[7]

(28) [8]Cæsar also intended to conquer[s] the Morini and Menapii, who had never been subdued, (29) but [9]when he had advanced towards them for several days, such storms arose that he was obliged to desist. He did, however, burn[s] their crops and houses, after which he led the army into camp for the winter.

BOOK IV

(1) The next war was begun[10] by the Suevi, a large[s] and warlike tribe.[11] From each canton of these people[12] some

[1] Subjv. [2] Veterānī. [3] Etsī, 52. [4] *Rear gate.* [5] Subjv., 178. [6] *Cast themselves.* [7] *Were left.* [8] *It was in mind to Cæsar.* [9] Part. of prōgredior. [10] *Made.* [11] See 48. [12] Omit.

go to war each year while the rest remain [1]to till the fields. [2]From this it follows[3] that they are not only skilful[4] in agriculture, but also valiant in war. Their food from boyhood is milk and flesh, and [5]although the country[6] is cold, they wear very scanty[7] clothing. This manner of life makes them large and strong. (2) They are expert[8] horsemen, but never use saddles, and consider it particularly disgraceful to do so.[9] They do not import wine, because it diminishes[10] their strength. (3) [11]Their neighbors[s] are the Ubii, somewhat less barbarous than the Suevi but tributary to them. (4) The Usipites and Tencteri had been in the same condition, but finally[s] left[s] their homes and, after wandering about, drove the Menapii from their lands.

(5) On account of the fickleness of the Gauls, Cæsar [12]had no confidence in them, (6) and on his arrival a number of states [13]were trying to induce the wandering Germans to come into their territory. Cæsar [14]had suspected that this would be the case and determined[s] to drive the Germans from Gaul.

(7) When he was near the Germans they sent messengers to say[s] that[15] they would resist any one who made[16] war upon them. [17]If the Romans would give them land, they would be useful to them. [17]The Suevi they feared[s], and admitted[s] to be superior to themselves.

(8) Cæsar replied, "If you have not been able to protect your own homes, I shall not give you others[s]; but you may settle among the Ubii."

[1] Use **causa**. [2] *From which things.* [3] **Fīō**. [4] **Perītus**. [5] See 1. [6] *Place.* [7] **Exiguus**. [8] Form an adj. on stem of **exercitātiō**. [9] *Which.* [10] What mood? [11] Say *nearest to them* or use **fīnitimī**. [12] Follow the text. [13] See **101**. [14] Participle. [15] **Fore ut**. [16] Note that time here is future. [17] In ind. disc.

(9) [1]Being requested by the Germans not to move his camp until the messengers should return,[2] Cæsar refused,[3] because they asked[s] this to cause delay. (11) When he had advanced to a point which was twelve miles from the enemy they asked[s] for an interval of three days to comply with his terms. Suspecting[4] treachery,[5] Cæsar proceeded four miles that day and ordered[s6] his cavalry not to attack the enemy. (12) Although[7] they themselves had asked for a truce on that day, the enemy attacked[s] Cæsar's horsemen and threw them into disorder. When the Romans had rallied, the Germans dismounted, stabbed many of our horses, killed some of our horsemen, and routed the rest[s].

After this engagement, in which seventy-four were slain,[s] (13) Cæsar thought[s] that he ought[s] immediately[8] to fight[s] men[9] who, after asking for a truce, [10]had made war without provocation, and (14) accordingly he proceeded at once against them. Since they were undecided what [11]to do, some fled and others [12]seized their arms and made a brief resistance; (15) but [13]when their companions were cut down behind them, they left the camp and fled toward the Rhine. Here many [14]not being able to cross perished in the river.

(16) Cæsar next decided that he must build a bridge across the Rhine, because many [15]of the conquered[s] Germans had gone into the land of the Sugambri, who [16]would not send them back, and because the Ubii were begging[s] him to help them against their enemies the

[1] **Rogō.** [2] See 180. [3] **Recūsō.** [4] **Suspicor.** [5] **Dolus.** [6] **Imperō.** [7] **Etsī.** [8] **Statim.** [9] *Those.* [10] Subjv. [11] Delib. subjv. (170) in ind. disc. [12] Participle. [13] Abl. Abs. [14] A cum-clause, 50. [15] Omit "of the." [16] Subjv., 168.

Suevi. (17) Having determined upon a plan[s] for a bridge, (18) he finished the work in ten days and led his army across. This so[s] impressed[1] the barbarians that they left[s] their towns and hid in dense forests.

(19) The Ubii told Cæsar that the Suevi would await the Romans at a place in the centre of their territory for the purpose of fighting with him. Thinking he had done enough [2]to frighten the Germans and aid[3] the Ubii, he returned into Gaul and destroyed the bridge.

(20) Although nothing was known about Britain except[4] that it had furnished aid[s] to his enemies, still Cæsar wished[s] to go there to learn[s] the character of the people[s] and the nature of the harbors and approaches.

(21) [5]Before making the attempt [6]in person he directed Volusenus to make a thorough investigation, and led his army to a place where the distance across to Britain was the shortest. While he was awaiting the return[7] of Volusenus, delegates from many of the neighboring tribes, and even from Britain, came to give him hostages. [8]After an absence of four days Volusenus came back in safety.[9] (22) Meanwhile, [10]when a large[s] number of hostages had been given by the Morini, [11]Cæsar took them under his protection so that when he had crossed to Britain he might not leave[s] an enemy behind him. His fleet now being collected, he sent the rest[s] of his army[s] among those tribes which had not sent delegates to him (23) and, the weather being suitable, he set sail.

That part of the coast of Britain which he first[s] reached

[1] Permoveō. [2] Use causā. [3] *Bear aid to.* [4] Praeterquam. [5] See 178. [6] Ipse, 136. [7] Reditus. [8] *On the fifth day.* [9] *Safe*; see synonyms. [10] Abl. abs. [11] Make "Morini" the object of "took," and omit "them."

was bordered by cliffs, on which the armed forces of the enemy were gathered. Not thinking this a suitable place, he proceeded farther, where he could land[1] on a flat and open beach. (24) It was even then very difficult to [2]effect a landing, since our men had to fight heavily burdened and in a strange place. (25) Cæsar ordered galleys to be placed near the exposed flank of the enemy so that they might be driven back with missiles. When this was done, the Britons were so[3] alarmed by the shape of the vessels and the nature of the artillery that they fell back a little. (26) Nevertheless the battle raged fiercely and the Britons attacked[3] many as they were struggling in the water; but[3] when once the Romans reached the shore, the latter quickly routed them.

(27) When the battle was over, the barbarians begged Cæsar to forgive them, and promised [3]to give part of the hostages at once and [3]to collect the rest as soon as possible.

(28) While the [4]cavalry transports [5]were trying to reach the island, they were driven back by a tempest, some to the place they had sailed from and some toward the southern[6] part of the island. (29) At the same time many of his other[3] vessels were injured by the storm and the high tides.

(31) [7]From the fact that the Britons had stopped giving hostages, Cæsar suspected that they would try[3] to [8]prevent his return to the continent. Accordingly, since twelve of his vessels were entirely disabled, he repaired the others with the timber and metal of these. (32) Before

[1] Subjv., 146. [2] *Disembark.* [3] See 118. [4] Express with a clause. [5] Imperfect of attempted action, 101. [6] *Lower.* [7] *Because.* [8] See chap. 30.

he could set sail,[1] however, a larger cloud of dust than usual was seen in the direction where the seventh legion had gone to get grain. Suspecting that the enemy were attacking the legion, Cæsar hastened with a large force to its relief. (34) At his arrival the enemy withdrew, and Cæsar led back his soldiers to camp because he did not wish[s] to [2]bring on a general engagement.

A few days afterward the enemy collected a large force and came to attack him, but (35) fled at the first onset of the Roman soldiers. (36) This ended the war for[3] that summer because, as soon as the weather was favorable, Cæsar set sail and reached the mainland [4]in safety with all his vessels.

[1] See 178. [2] *Join battle.* [3] *Of.* [4] *Safe.*

MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO. Bust in the Vatican.

PART II

BASED UPON CICERO: CATILINE I–IV, ARCHIAS, AND THE MANILIAN LAW

INTRODUCTORY NOTES

1. Thorough preparation of the text of Cicero ought to be sufficient preparation for these exercises. The text furnishes the vocabulary and the models of syntax, order and arrangement, idioms, etc.

2. The grammatical references are to the grammars of Allen and Greenough (A.), Bennett (B.), Gildersleeve (G.), and Harkness (H.). References in parentheses are to the old edition. A comma is to be understood as meaning "and"; ff. = "and following"; cf. = compare. The student is advised for his own convenience to underscore the references to his own particular grammar.

3. The numbers in parenthesis are references to the Grammatical Index, p. 265. Words inclosed in brackets [ ] are to be omitted in translation. A superior s (*e.g.* last[s]) refers to the Table of Synonyms, p. 253.

4. Preceding the sentences in most of the chapters are *common phrases* and *idioms*, which are to be learned and frequently repeated.

5. To aid in the acquisition of a vocabulary, certain words in each chapter of the exercises for oral translation are printed in heavy-faced type. These words call for the most common Latin words, and it is expected that they will be thoroughly learned. The text of the passage under consideration will show what Latin equivalents are wanted.

6. *The student may expect to find at least six instances in each chapter of the special topic of that chapter.*

FOR ORAL TRANSLATION

CATILINE I

Questions; Direct and Indirect

A. 330–332, 573, 574 (210, 334); B. 162, 300, 1, *a*, *b*; G. 452–456, 467; H. 378, 649. ii

Chap. 1. Last[s] night; night before last; the world; desirous of revolution.

1. By whom was this **oration** delivered? 2. How **long** had Catiline abused the **patience** of the senate? 3. Did his unbridled **audacity** baffle them? 4. What was Catiline **doing** last night? 5. We **know**[s] what he was doing. 6. I know where you were. 7. Who of us (82) does not know what (of) **plan**[s] you are going to adopt? 8. Was the senate doing its duty by the **state**? 9. Catiline **ought**[s] to be marked for slaughter. 10. No one can tell[s] how long he has been **plotting** our ruin. 11. Do you not know why Scipio, a **private** citizen, killed[s] Gracchus? 12. You, Catiline, ought to be killed by the consul's **hand.**

Genitive with Judicial Verbs

A. 352 (220); B. 208; G. 378; H. 456

Chap. 2. Daily[s] (*two expressions*); too cruelly.

1. Let the consul **see** (171) that the republic receive no **harm.** 2. The consul sees what harm the republic has

received. 3. The senate **decreed** that (*ut*) Gracchus should be slain[s]. 4. But he **condemns** himself (*sē ipse*) for his inactivity. 5. Now for twenty **days** (the twentieth day) we have **suffered**[s] (*pres.*) Catiline to live[s]. 6. Should he not have been killed[s] at once? 7. Cicero, the consul, **desires**[s] not to seem hasty. 8. He condemns Catiline for his audacity. 9. I acquit (*absolvō*) you of that charge[s] (*crīmen*). 10. **Daily** their leader is contriving the **ruin**[s] of the state. 11. I do not have to fear[s] that I **arrested** (148) Catiline too late. 12. Do you condemn yourself for your shiftlessness? 13. Who is there to **defend** (155) you? 14. The consuls accused (*arguō*) Gracchus of rebellion. 15. The father accuses (*accūsō*) his children of idleness.

Indirect Discourse. Tenses of the Infinitive

A. 579 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 508. 2, 648 ff.; H. 621 ff.
A. 584 (288); B. 270; G. 530, 531; H. 617–620

Chap. 3. 1. Is there anything[s] (*num quid*) that a private **house** can (155) keep within its **walls**[s]? 2. You ought[s] to **forget** that (*iste*) infamous purpose (90) [of yours]. 3. I **say** that Manlius will be in arms[s] on the 26th of October (165). 4. Do you **remember** that Catiline was in arms on the 2d of October? 5. Is it to be **wondered at** that I was **deceived**? 6. He says that the slaughter of the nobility will be **set** for the 30th of October. 7. Do you not remember that many **leading men** of the state fled from Rome? 8. Can you not be satisfied with the **slaughter** of us (our slaughter) who remain? 9. Do you **fear**[s] that I shall not fortify (148) Praeneste? 10. He **denied** that a **night** attack was made upon Prænestе on the 3d of November.

Partitive Genitive

A. 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367–372; H. 440. 5, 441–444

Chap. 4. To keep a sharp lookout; where in the world? at Læca's (house); into Læca's house.

1. There are **certain** men here in the senate **who** were there that night. 2. Who of **you** were with Catiline? 3. Do you **deny** that you mapped out the **parts** of Italy? 4. The most venerable of the **knights** say that you did not dare to deny it. 5. Are there not certain men who are plotting the **death** of all of **us**? 6. There was a little **delay** because Cicero was alive. 7. I know not (*nesciō*) where in the world I am (152). 8. Cicero did not know **where** in the world he was. 9. A part of your **companions** promised to fortify (118) their houses. 10. There ought to be a **little anxiety** about the **safety** of the consul.

Iam dudum, etc., with the Present

A. 466 (276. *a*); B. 259. 4; G. 230; H. 533

Chap. 5. Such being the case; as many as possible; in the case of one man; as long as; as often as.

1. **Too** long have you been in the **city**. 2. Since (*cum*, 50) the **gates** are open, begone. 3. Take (lead) out with you as many as possible [of] your friends. 4. **Free** the city from fear. 5. Too long has the safety of the state been jeoparded. 6. Jupiter Stator **himself** has long been between you and me (me and you). 7. **As** long as Cicero **could** defend himself by personal (private) **watchfulness**, he did not employ[s] a public **guard**[s]. 8. He defended himself without exciting any public commotion (*abl. abs.*). 9. I have **not yet** dared to put Catiline to death. 10. But I have bidden[s] him to **depart** from the

city. 11. I have long been **urging** him to go. 12. You have long been hesitating to go into **exile.**

Relative Clauses of Characteristic

A. 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631, 1, 2; H. 591, 1, 4, 5

Chap. 6. 1. There was **nobody** in the city who did not fear[s] Catiline. 2. Who was there that did not **hate** him? 3. We all know[s] that the ruin[s] (*plur.*) of your **fortunes** is **hanging over** you. 4. There is nothing that **pleases** you any longer. 5. On the first of January you **stood** in the Comitium, weapon[s] in hand (with a weapon). 6. You had long been standing **in** the forum. 7. The fortune of the Roman **people** stands in the way of (*obstō*) your frantic attempt (**madness**). 8. There is nobody who does **not know** that your monstrous **crime** (*use noun w. gen.*) was not **punished**[s]. 9. No one of us is ignorant that your dagger has been **wrested** from your (70) hands. 10. What evil deed can be done which you have not **attempted**?

Conditional Sentences: Third Form

A. 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579

Chap. 7. To be inconsistent with; a little while ago; as soon as.

1. I ought[s] to be moved by **hatred**, not by **pity.** 2. If you had come into the senate, no one would have **saluted** you. 3. This has never (*numquam*) **happened**[s] to the consul. 4. You (64) ought to **abandon**[s] your home. 5. If my fellow citizens were afraid of me, I should **avoid** the **sight** of them. 6. If my country hated me, I should fear[s] her **power**[s]. 7. If you had departed, you would have **delivered** her from fear (cf. *hunc . . . ēripe*). 8. **No** plan is formed that is inconsistent with your

villany. 9. If this fear were groundless, we should cease to fear. 10. If you had not gone away, your slaves would have been afraid of you.

Conditional Sentences: Second Form

A. 516. 2, *b*, *c* (307. 2, *b*, *c*); B. 303; G. 596; H. 576, 577

Chap. 8. I will let you know (make that you know[s]); violent hands.

1. If you should give yourself into custody, you would avoid **suspicion**. 2. To avoid (for the sake[s] of avoiding) suspicion, Catiline **is willing** to dwell[s] at Cicero's. 3. But Cicero will not keep him at **his** house (120). 4. If you were to **live**[s] with **me**, would you escape suspicion? 5. If you should **ask** Metellus, he would **refuse** you. 6. If I should ask you to keep me at your house, you would refuse me. 7. If the senate had decreed (55) that he should **go** into exile, he would have **complied**. 8. If he were to judge[s] himself **worthy** of custody (8), he ought[s] not to be long out of **jail**. 9. I have long had hard work to keep[s] (hardly keep) the hands of the knights away from you. 10. They would be willing to **escort** you to the gates, if you would go away.

Optative Subjunctive

A. 441 (267); B. 279; G. 260, 261; H. 558

Chap. 9. It is worth the cost (85), worth while; on the other hand.

1. O that the **immortal** gods would **crush** you! 2. O that the gods had given you that **intention**! 3. Would that Catiline had **yielded** to the **exigencies** of the state! 4. I wish you would go into exile! 5. It would be worth the cost if you should go. 6. Catiline is not

the man (*is*) to **fear**[s] the **laws**. 7. If you wish (53) to make war upon your country, you will **separate** yourself from good citizens. 8. If you should go into exile, you would **kindle** [a flame of] **odium** against me. 9. When he sets out (*part.*) for slaughter, he **worships** his silver eagle. 10. May that eagle prove his ruin (*use adj.*). 11. Would that Manlius had not waited for that band of **scoundrels**!

Ablative of Cause

A. 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475

Chap. 10. Not only . . . but also; neither . . . nor.

1. You are on fire (*ārdeō*) with unbridled **passion**. 2. Would that you, Catiline, were a good citizen! 3. You exult with great **joy** when plotting against the good. 4. You have had an opportunity to plot against (cf. *habēs ubi ostentēs*) the **property** of peaceful men. 5. In a **short** time you will be **exhausted** with **cold** [and] **hunger** [and] **want**. 6. **So much** has been **accomplished**. 7. You will rejoice in our sorrow. 8. I will drive you from the consulship because of your **mad** ambition. 9. On this account[s] may fortune preserve thee!

Ablative of Comparison

A. 406 (247); B. 217; G. 398; H. 471

Chap. 11. To return a favor.

1. Is anything[s] (*num quid*) **dearer** to you than **life**? 2. My **country** is far (much) dearer to me than life. 3. She asks[s] me **whether** I have not found[s] Catiline more pernicious than an **enemy**[s]. 4. Can there be a more **reasonable** complaint than **this**? 5. Are you prevented by the **custom**[s] of our ancestors? 6. **Those** who **revolt**

from the state are no longer (*nōn iam*) citizens. 7. **Inactivity** is very much more to be feared than **severity**. 8. If Italy is laid waste by war, I shall be consumed in a **conflagration** of hatred. 9. This is a much more famous city than **that**.

Relative Clauses of Result

A. 537. 2 (319. 2); B. 284. 2; G. 631; H. 591

Chap. 12. To have the same feeling; forever; to punish[s] (*two expressions*).

1. If I thought they held the same views, I should not **reply**. 2. The **best** thing to do (177) is to make a brief reply to these **solemn words**. 3. No one is so[s] **ignorant** as not to know[s] that Catiline is a parricide (34). 4. There are some so cruel that they will not grant me an **hour** to live[s]. 5. The **conspiracy** cannot be **put down** forever by the death of Catiline alone (*abl. abs.*). 6. I am not so **stupid** as to **conceal** what I see. 7. No one was **so** bad as **not** to wish to see the conspiracy put down. 8. No one is so inexperienced that he does not know by whose **authority** this was done (152). 9. There is no curse of the republic so great that it cannot be checked.[s]

Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive

A. 439, 440 (266); B. 274, 275; G. 263; H. 559. 1, 2

Chap. 13. Alive or dead; to punish[s]; by some means or other

1. The conscript fathers had long **been involved** in the **dangers** of this conspiracy. 2. If Catiline is left[s] (*abl. abs.*), do not be concerned in his **plots**. 3. Let this (so) great danger be **removed**. 4. If a **sick** man **drinks** cold water, he is relieved **at first**[s]. 5. But drinking (*inf.*) cold water is not the best thing to do. 6. Let not a sick man

drink cold water. 7. Let us separate the good from the bad. 8. Let [those] who have **united** (themselves) with Catiline **depart** to the impious war. 9. May Jove **keep** (172) this man **away** from his **temples**. 10. Cease to plot against Cicero in his own house.

CATILINE II

Causal Clauses with **quod**, etc.

A. 540 (321); B. 286; G. 539–542; H. 588

Chap. 1. To snatch a thing (*aliquid*) from any one's (*alicuī*, **70**) hands.

1. At last, fellow citizens, Catiline has been **expelled** because he was **contriving** our ruin. 2. Since he has been **driven** from the forum, let us **all rejoice**. 3. That **dagger** has been wrested from his hands. 4. The consul wrested the dagger out of Catiline's hand. 5. He was **broken down** with sorrow because I was **alive**. 6. He was prostrated with **grief** because the blade of his dagger was not stained with blood (bloody). 7. Let the city rejoice because he has left it **safe**[s]. 8. He is **wailing** because he has been overcome[s].

Uses of Impersonal Verbs

A. 208 (146); B. 138; G. 208; H. 302 ff.

Chap. 2. To be indignant; to be punished; **debt**; the public welfare; with too small a retinue; in boyhood.

1. We ought[s] to have arrested Catiline **rather than** let him escape. 2. So deadly a **foe** ought **long ago** to have been **put to death**. 3. If I had **thought**[s] that the public welfare **required** his death[s], I should have removed him.

4. But I saw[s] that not all of you approved such a course (*haec rēs*). 5. Would that you had **believed** what I reported (168)! 6. You ought to believe. 7. You **may** take (cf. *licet intellegātis*, 183) Minutius with you 8. Catiline is permitted[s] to **take out** all his forces. 9. I was vexed **that** he did not take them all with him. 10. I am ashamed (*pudet*) of the wickedness (88) in which the associates of Catiline exult.

Conditional Sentences: First Form

A. 515, 516 (306, 307); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574, 575

Chap. 3. 1. If he has an **army** in the Gallic **territory**, the old men will **desert** (it). 2. Metellus ought[s] to have **held** that levy. 3. Remember (99) that I **know**[s] to whom the Picenian territory has been **assigned**. 4. If Catiline has not fled, I will **show** him the edict of the **praetor**. 5. You are greatly **mistaken** if you think that army is to be **feared**[s]. 6. If they desert the army, they are not to be feared. 7. They are mistaken if they think[s] that Apulia will be (*fore ut*) assigned to them. 8. If I see any soldiers **coming** into the forum, I will **remain here**.

Accusative in Exclamations

A. 397. *d* (240. *d*); B. 183; G. 343. 1; H. 421

Chap. 4. So great . . . as; to live on intimate terms with.

1. O lost men! Who now can **assist** you? 2. O **fortunate** men, **if** they **overtake** him! 3. If they are assassins, they are **like** Catiline (77). 4. Poor[s] Catiline pines with **longing** for (of) these **profligates**. 5. O **wretched** Catiline, if they do not overtake him! 6. O fortunate republic, if it gets rid of this parricide! 7. There is no

scoundrel in Rome (120) with whom he does not **live** (155) on intimate terms. 8. O **incredible crime**! In what corner of the city can you not be **found**? 9. O Italy! Shall I ever see thee **relieved** of this assassin?

Ablative of Means or Instrument

A. 409 (248. *c*. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476

Chap. 5. Nothing but.

1. These drunkards are **weakened** by debauchery. 2. You see them wreathed with garlands. 3. And yet this **same** man is **using up** the **means** of virtuous living (of virtue). 4. Those men **assert** that he is **brave** because (*cum*) he can **endure**[s] hunger and **thirst**. 5. Let us train (171) ourselves by the practice of **virtue**. 6. Fortunate should we be, if his **companions** had followed him. 7. The **republic** is being wasted by intestine war. 8. There is no king for us to fear (155). 9. We need not fear men stupid with **wine**. 10. These men are supplied (*suppeditō*) with **food and even** with garlands, although credit failed them long ago.

Temporal Clauses with cum

A. 545–548 (325); B. 288, 289; G. 580, 585; H. 600, 601

Chap. 6. There are some who say; yesterday; nay more; on his own account.

1. **When** the senate was **summoned**[s], Catiline came. 2. **But** there were some who said that Catiline was **ordered**[s] to go into exile. 3. Was he so excessively modest that he could not **bear** the **voice** of the consul? 4. When I **asked**[s] him what he did yesterday, he **hesitated**. 5. That famous silver **eagle** was not sent to Rome (30), was it? 6. When the **senators** beheld Catiline, they

would not (*nōlō*) salute him. 7. When he **set out** from the city, he went to the camp of Manlius. 8. When I was in the temple of Jupiter, the senators asked me whether **or not** Catiline was a public enemy. 9. When you knew that he had **declared** war, you had to cast him out.

The Gerundive Construction (Genitive)

A. 504, *b* (298, *c*); B. 338, 1, 339, 1; G. 428; H. 626

Chap. 7. 1. When Catiline **gave up** the **design** of making war, what did he do? 2. It is said that I (I am said to, **132**) have sent into exile an **innocent** [man]. 3. It is worth while to **submit to** odium for the **sake**[s] of **casting out** a rascal. 4. There are some who **think**[s] him unfortunate rather than **bad**. 5. I have not abandoned my design of **preserving** the state. 6. Catiline has gone to Manlius for the purpose of **leading** that army. 7. I fear that he will be **hovering around** in arms[s] near the city in the hope of killing the consuls. 8. What reason is there for **turning** his course[s] to exile, if he is innocent? 9. Is it not worth while (**85**) to be thought **diligent** (*acc.*)?

Ablative of Manner

A. 412 (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473. 3

Chap. 8. 1. The **love** of holding estates can in no **way** be **taken** from men. 2. You are enemies. 3. Do you not **admit**[s] that you are enemies? 4. I know not in what way I can **conciliate** these men. 5. I have said **nothing** about those who are not willing to **listen to** me. 6. They are heavily in debt. 7. In no other manner can these things **be done**. 8. I think[s] that the rich are **very little** to be feared[s]. 9. We can with **kindness** dis-

suade these men from their purposes. 10. They admit with the greatest impudence (cf. *impudentissima*) that they are supplied with everything they wish. 11. I will strive with the greatest zeal (noun from stem of *studeō*) to make them better citizens.

Dative with Compounds

A. 370 (228); B. 187, iii; G. 347; H. 429

Chap. 9. First . . . secondly . . . finally.

1. I give them this warning. 2. This direction must be given (this must be directed) to those of the second class. 3. Finally, may the immortal gods render (172) aid[s] to this fair city. 4. Let us provide (171) for the public welfare ourselves. 5. Catiline has succeeded Manlius. 6. The colonists as a whole[s] are excellent men. 7. There are some who covet these things with the utmost frenzy. 8. Let the suffering of these times be fixed indelibly upon your minds. 9. If we should give up the republic to these men, not even the rustics would tolerate it.

Ablative of Specification

A. 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480

Chap. 10. Through bad management; as soon as possible; be assured.

1. The fifth class is in its very nature peculiarly Catiline's. 2. If these men should fall, I do not think the state would feel [it]. 3. These men surpass (*praecēdō*) all others[s] in extravagance. 4. They are shameless in their lives (*sing.*). 5. Be assured that these poor [wretches] cannot endure[s] the snows of the Apennines. 6. If these criminals are so many in number, let them

go to Catiline. 7. Do you **think**[s] they can **bear** the **winter**? 8. Those who are sluggish in business will be **overwhelmed** with debt. 9. If these men had been as **active** in honest **labor** as they have been in brigandage, we should not wish them to go away.

Causal Clauses with **cum**

A. 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598

Chap. 11. On this side . . . on that; utter despair.

1. It was a war **greatly** to be feared, **since** Catiline had such splendid troops. 2. He **lacks** a **treasury** and **revenues**, which we are supplied with. 3. Since he is in want of all these things, he is not a match for (does not **respond** to) us. 4. Since we are **comparing** merely (*ipse*) the cases, let us omit other things (*alius*). 5. **Finally**, since well-grounded **hope** is in conflict with utter despair, we shall not **fail**. 6. Since that **wounded** robber is weakened by privation, we shall not have to lead the **flower** of our army against him. 7. We can fight with good courage, since the gods themselves will **oppose** our foes.

Second Periphrastic Conjugation. Dative of Agent

A. 193–196, 500. 2 (129, 294. *b*); B. 115, 337. 7, *b*; G. 251; H. 237, 621. 1, 2. A. 374 (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431

Chap. 12. A sufficient guard; measures have been taken; provision has been made; again and again.

1. If you will defend your own **homes**, the consul will provide a **sufficient guard** for the city. 2. Since these things are **so**[s], I will provide for the city. 3. I shall have to **summon**[s] the senate. 4. We have sent Metellus ahead to **hinder** (146) the **movements** of Catiline. 5. Those enemies[s] whom Catiline has **left**[s] in the city we must[s]

warn again and again. 6. I must not forget that many have **remained** in the city. 7. You must live[s] with those enemies who are citizens. 8. All must **die**. 9. The consuls must defend the city. 10. The city is supplied (*suppeditō*) with arms and a prison. 11. The republic does not lack (*egeō*) vigilant **consuls**.

Clauses of Pure Result

A. 537. 1, 538 (319); B. 284; G. 552; H. 570

Chap. 13. Acting in a civil capacity, in the garb of peace; by land and sea.

1. I must **so administer** all these things **that** there may be no **outbreak**. 2. The danger that threatens[s] us is **so great** that a **few** good men may **perish**. 3. If we rely (*frētus*, 9) upon **human** wisdom, can we be **safe**? 4. The dangers are so great that we ought to **pray to** the gods. 5. These desperate citizens have been so checked that you are now safe[s]. 6. Such danger **threatened** the country that **gentleness** could not be hoped for. 7. There were so many intimations from the gods that I knew they would **surely** defend the city.

CATILINE III

Clauses of Pure Purpose

A. 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568, 590

Chap. 1. To-day; a few days ago; the lives of all of you.

1. I have **saved** your (*vester*) lives that I might be in **honor among** you. 2. The immortal gods have **snatched** the republic from the **jaws** of **doom** in order that you may see it restored to you. 3. The consul was vigilant

that the citizens might not be in danger. 4. I will **explain** the matter so that you may not **be ignorant.** 5. Cicero explained **briefly** how the fires[s] were extinguished, that his fellow-citizens might know[s] from what they had been preserved. 6. I snatched your **children** from peril that I might see[s] them restored to you and the state[s].

Imperfect of Attempted or Continued Action

A. 471, *c* (277, *c*); B. 260, 3; G. 233; H. 530, 535

Chap. 2. Yesterday; war beyond the Alps; an outbreak in Gaul.

1. **At that time** Cicero was **spending** all his time (*tempus*) in an effort to (*in eō ut*) **discover**[s] who had stayed in Rome (120). 2. They were trying to send messengers to Catiline. 3. We were trying to expel Catiline **from** the city. 4. The consul was trying to provide for the safety of the city. 5. I was trying to show the prætors what I **wished**[s] them to **do.** 6. When the Allobroges had **gone upon** the **bridge,** our men made an attack on them. 7. The consul made continual use of (used continually) the **aid** (23) of several **young men** from Reate (*adj.*). 8. **Both** the Allobroges **and** our men used their **swords.**

Temporal Clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam**

A. 550, 551 (327); B. 291, 292; G. 574–577; H. 605

Chap. 3. 1. The **letters** were laid before the senate **before** I **opened** them. 2. I decided to **assemble** the senate before opening the letters. 3. The consul decided not to open the letters before assembling the senate. 4. Before Gabinius could **suspect** anything[s] he was sum-

moned to Cicero. 5. I said that I would not open the letters before the senate assembled. 6. The daggers were found by the prætor before any one could **carry** them **off**. 7. The **seals** of the letters that were found[s] in that **company** were **unbroken**. 8. The senate decided (it **pleased**, etc.) that Gabinius should be summoned[s]. 9. The prætor was trying to find the swords and daggers in Cethegus's **house**.

Relative Clauses of Purpose

A. 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 590

Chap. 4. Leaders in the city; orders were given.

1. The leaders will **assign** parts of the city for us to burn. 2. Volturcius was **brought in** before he had recovered from his **fear**. 3. They gave me a guard[s] to (which I might) **use** if infantry **were lacking**. 4. I urge you to declare[s] fearlessly what you know[s] (168). 5. When the city has been **set on fire** (*fut. perf.*), Catiline will **approach** with an army[s]. 6. He will **be at hand** to pick up the **fugitives**. 7. Slaves are sent to him to use. 8. The Gauls were brought in to tell what they knew. 9. Orders are given to the Gauls to (*ut*) be at hand with **cavalry**. 10. Cavalry is sent into Italy to **unite** (**themselves**) with the infantry. 11. Lentulus (68) had a **dispute** with Cethegus and the **rest**[s].

Concessive Clauses with **cum**

A. 527, 549 (313, *d*); B. 309, 3; G. 587; H. 598

Chap. 5. A little while ago (before); some time afterward; **at** first . . . at last (finally).

1. Cethegus made some sort of reply (replied **something**) about the swords and daggers **that** (43) we discovered[s]

at his house. 2. I asked Lentulus why he was silent. 3. **Though** he was silent, he **confessed** a little (7) later (*post*). 4. Volturcius was brought in to show[s] **how great** the power of **conscience** is (was). 5. Though he **surpassed**[s] all in effrontery, **even** this failed him at this time. 6. What have I to do **with** you? 7. Why did you come to my house? 8. If you wish[s] to say **anything**[s] about the seal, you (68) have the **opportunity**. 9. Catiline knows[s] who he is. 10. Though Gabinius at first[s] made an impudent reply, he finally confessed[s]. 11. Though the confession was a **sure** proof of **guilt**, much surer was their silence. 12. Although I asked the Gauls whose the **tablets** were, they **firmly** said they did not know. 13. Although I know who you are, I will not reply.

Causal Clauses with **quod**, etc.

A. 540 (321); B. 286; G. 539–442; H. 588

Chap. 6. To render thanks; to resign (an office); since the founding of the city.

1. The senate saw fit to pass a vote of (**render**) **thanks** to the consul in the strongest **terms**. 2. Since the **decree** of the senate has not been **written out**, I will explain it from **memory**. 3. The senate **praised** the prætors **because** they had rendered **loyal** aid[s] to the consul. 4. The senate **decreed** that Lentulus should **resign** the prætorship because he was an enemy of the state[s]. 5. Let the same decree be passed (same thing be decreed) **against** Cethegus and[s] the rest, all[s] of whom (who all) are **present**. 6. **Also** against Cassius because he **claimed**[s] for himself the charge of firing the city. 7. A **thanksgiving** was appointed because the republic had been saved. 8. Lentulus was not **punished**[s], because he (51) was prætor.

9. Some time afterward he was **delivered** into **custody** because he had roused the colonists.

Conditional Sentences: Third Form

A. 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579

Chap. 7. 1. I **foresaw** that, when their leaders had been **captured**, all their hopes would **collapse** (use *fore ut*). 2. We do not have to fear Lucius Cassius, seeing that Catiline is **removed** (*abl. abs.*). 3. If Catiline had had the courage (had dared), he would have **thwarted** the designs of the consul. 4. Is there anything (*quisquam*) which (155) he does not **attend to** himself? 5. There was no hunger nor thirst that he was not ready to bear. 6. If he had not been so **crafty**, we should not have feared[s] him. 7. If he had not known[s] everything, he would not have **proclaimed** the day of doom so long in advance (so much **before**). 8. If he were **now** in the city, he would be seized. 9. If he had been absent, this conspiracy would have been **detected** easily. 10. If we had removed him, we should have freed the republic from danger.

Ablative of Time

A. 423 (256); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487

Chap. 8. So many of which; struck by lightning; to remember; to-day.

1. These important interests (so great things) **seem** to have been **prearranged** by the immortal gods. 2. It does not belong to (is not of) human **wisdom** in these **times** to direct (cf. *gubernātiō*) them. 3. It **hardly** seemed possible that I could manage everything (I hardly seemed to be able, etc., 132). 4. We have seen[s] at night **torches** in the west. 5. At what time were **objects** in the

capitol **struck** by lightning? 6. For surely you remember that **yonder** Romulus was **thrown down**. 7. At that time the **soothsayers** said[s] that civil war was **approaching**. 8. I am not going to **pass by** these events that are now taking[s] place. 9. Yesterday we were about to turn the **statue**[s] of Jupiter toward the east. 10. On this very day, in our consulship, the statue was **set up**.

Ablative of Agent

A. 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468, 1

Chap. 9. At this point; this very morning.

1. Nobody can deny that everything is **controlled** by the gods. 2. Who is so infatuated as to (*quī*, 162) deny that this was done **by** Jupiter? 3. These crimes[s] have been **planned** by infamous citizens. 4. The **destruction** of the republic was **undertaken** by the conspirators. 5. This very morning the **statue**[s] of Jupiter was **set up** so as to face (be turned toward) the temple of Concord. 6. If the conspirators should **oppose** me (72), they would be worthy of the severest (greatest) **punishment**. 7. If we should attempt[s] to resist the immortal gods, we should be overcome by Jupiter himself. 8. Do not (135) **take** too much upon yourselves. 9. The Gauls **preferred** your safety to their own hope of **empire**. 10. All things are directed by the immortal gods.

Ablative of Separation

A. 400–402 (243); B. 214; G. 390; H. 461–465

Chap. 10. There is no need of saying; to regard as enemies.

1. Therefore, fellow-citizens, **celebrate** the thanksgiving which the **senate** has decreed[s]. 2. We have **res-**

cued you from a **cruel** death. 3. Let us **recall (171)** the dissensions of Marius and Sulla. 4. When Sulla drove Marius out of the city, many men were slain[s]. 5. Do you not remember that, when Octavius was consul, the forum **flowed** (*pres. inf.*) with the **blood** of citizens? 6. Catulus **was at variance** with Lepidus. 7. **None** of these dissensions **tended** to the overthrow of the government (*rēs pūblica*). 8. You have all been preserved from **massacre**. 9. The leaders of these **quarrels** must be driven out of the state[s]. 10. Do you think[s] that many would **survive** from the number of citizens if Catiline were safe[s]?

Complementary Infinitive

A. 456 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607, 608

Chap. 11. 1. Fellow-citizens, **cherish** in your memory these **triumphs** of **mine**. 2. If all were able to obtain the honor of this day, I would not ask for it. 3. The **speech** of men[s] will tend (*pertineō*) to **prolong** the memory of my consulship. 4. **Less** worthy men than I can be **charmed** with mute **memorials** of honor. 5. Let the memory of my deeds **become established** in the records of your literature. 6. I venture (*audeō*) to hope that the **boundaries** of your empire will be set (use *fore ut*) in the regions of the sky. 7. I wish the memory of my consulship to be **eternal**. 8. Roman citizens were accustomed (*soleō*) to ask for a triumph **in return for** great services.

Dative with Special Verbs

A. 367 (227); B. 187, ii; G. 346; H. 426, 1

Chap. 12. It is your (my, etc.) duty; we are **injured**; he was injured; they will be injured.

1. It was the consul's duty to provide that nothing (*nē quid*) should harm the city. 2. We have to live[s] with those whom we have **conquered**[s]. 3. **Your** duty it is to see that I am not harmed by these men. 4. What **higher** [step] is there to which I care (it pleases me) to **ascend**? 5. When you have worshipped Jupiter, you will be at **peace**. 6. We must not **neglect** the power of conscience. 7. If you should neglect the power of conscience, you would **betray** yourselves. 8. **Unpopularity hinders**[s] one (*is*) who wishes to preserve the state. 9. That which I have done will **be a benefit** to me in private [life]. 10. Shall I take counsel (*cōnsulō*) for my own **glory** or for the safety of my fellow-citizens (**150**)?

CATILINE IV

Deliberative Subjunctive

A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559, 4

Chap. 1. 1. We are **anxious** about the dangers of the state. 2. Forgetful of all dangers, I think **only** of you and your families. 3. The condition of the **consulship** is that a consul should forget (**163**) his own safety (**90**). 4. My (*dat.*) house has **never** been **free** from sorrow. 5. Why should I not endure[s] many labors[s], **provided** that (**74**) I cure many evils? 6. Shall my **couch** never be secure from the danger of **death**[s]? 7. Should I not **yield** much? 8. Why should it not be the **issue** of my consulship that I should rescue your **wives** from bitter outrage? 9. Shall the **name** of Lentulus be designed by fate for the **destruction** of the republic? 10. Who can forget the **perils** of **my** consulship?

Dative with Compounds

A. 370 (228); B. 187, iii; G. 347; H. 429

Chap. 2. In proportion as I **deserve**, according to **my deserts.**

1. Many a tempest will threaten[s] the city, if we do not **take care.** 2. If anything[s] should happen[s] to me, would you **cease** to think[s] about me? 3. If I am overwhelmed (*fut.*), **look out** for my **wife** and children. 4. The gods will **guard** this city. 5. You are not so (that) iron-hearted as (*quī*) not to **be affected** by the slaughter of us all (78). 6. If anything[s] happens[s] to me, I **hope** to die (118) with composure (ready mind). 7. A **shameful** death threatens all who do not exert themselves to save the city.

Predicate Genitive

A. 343. *b* (214. 1. *c*); B. 198. 3, 203. 5; G. 366; H. 447 ff.

Chap. 3. An honor which, etc.; to **lay before** the senate (for action), (for information).

1. **First**[s], a vote of thanks to Cicero was passed, because by his **diligence** the **conspiracy** was **exposed** (49). 2. **Secondly**, Lentulus and the rest[s] were given into custody. 3. Lastly, a thanksgiving was decreed in Cicero's name. 4. That great honor belongs to Cicero, the civilian. 5. It was [the part] of the consul to lay the matter before the senate. 6. It is the informer's duty to report everything. 7. It was Cicero's duty to **crush** the conspiracy. 8. It is your part, conscript fathers, to decide[s] about the **fact.** 9. I hope you will **determine**[s] about the punishment before **night.** 10. You will not crush the conspiracy by **compelling** (95) Lentulus to resign; by giving rewards to Volturcius. 11. This **method** of **punishment** is the consul's.

Predicate Nominative and Accusative

A. 283, 284 (176, 185); B. 167, 168; G. 205, 206, 385; H. 393. A. 393 (239, *a*); B. 177; G. 340; H. 410

Chap. 4. Imprisonment for life; that no one shall, etc.

1. Is death a punishment or a **necessity** of **nature** (150)? 2. Cæsar thought[s] that death[s] was not a punishment but a **rest** from toil. 3. He thought that **imprisonment** for life was the **peculiar** punishment for (of) **infamous** crime[s]. 4. Let us **ordain** (171) that no one shall **break** the bonds of these men. 5. Let it be ordained **besides** that life **alone** be left[s] to them. 6. Are not such (*tālis*) crimes worthy of imprisonment (8) for life? 7. Let the punishment be worthy of the crime. 8. Are not these men worthy of death? 9. Is it consistent with the **dignity** (84) of the free-towns to **lighten** their punishment? 10. It is **often** the duty of **wise** men to meet death gladly. 11. The senate appointed[s] Cæsar and Silanus as keepers so that the rascals might not break their bonds. 12. Death has no terrors.

Genitive with **interest** and **rēfert**

A. 355, *a* (222, *a*); B. 211, *a*; G. 381; H. 449, 1

Chap. 5. Day before yesterday; I am inclined to think; hereafter.

1. It was for Cicero's **interest** to second (**follow**) the **proposition** of Caius Cæsar. 2. I saw what was for your (*vestrā*) interest. 3. It is for the consul's interest that a thanksgiving be decreed. 4. We **know**[s] that Gracchus was the proposer of the Sempronian law. 5. Can an enemy of the state[s] be in any sense (*modus*) a citizen? 6. I am inclined to think that Cæsar wished[s] to be **popular**. 7. **More**[s] trouble (82) is in store for Catiline.

8. The law[s] ordains that hereafter no one be **consigned** to **darkness** and chains. 9. The informers are worthy of great **rewards**. 10. Cæsar knew what was for his own good. How does this **concern** you? 11. It does not concern me that Lentulus is **regarded** as the **author** of this attack.

Double or Disjunctive Questions

A. 334, 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458, 459; H. 380

Chap. 6. Methinks I see; to inflict punishment on; in the case of those men.

1. The proposal of Silanus is (by) **much milder** than Cæsar's. 2. Is the proposal of Silanus or [that] of Cæsar the milder? 3. It is for the interest of the state to punish a crime of such **enormity**. 4. Is there more of **cruelty** or of **mercy** in punishing[s] crime[s] (95)? 5. Methinks I see Cethegus revelling in your **blood**. 6. Methought I saw a **slave** killing my children. 7. Should I not seem cruel if I did not kill[s] the slave (54)? 8. Can you **enjoy** life (23) if you see Lentulus on the throne (reigning)? 9. If I did not inflict the severest punishment on him, I should seem too moderate. 10. In the case of Lentulus, if I put him to death, shall I be regarded as cruel **or merciful**? 11. Was Cicero moved by a cruel (cruelty of) disposition or by extraordinary **courtesy**? 12. I asked[s] whether he would follow Lentulus or come with me. 13. Was the house set on fire or not?

Relative Clauses of Characteristic

A. 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631, 1, 2; H. 591, 1, 4, 5

Chap. 7. Patriotism; every preparation has been made.

1. The forum was the only **place** in which there was

a sufficient guard[s]. 2. This is the only **case** in which knights and[s] senators have one and the same feeling. 3. These (*iste*) are the only men whom we can reckon in the number of citizens. 4. Every preparation and every provision have been made for preserving (94) the fortunes of all. 5. **Who** is there who does not know[s] that the **whole** multitude of **free-born** citizens **is present**? 6. There are some who do not see that I can easily **pick out** the **wicked** citizens. 7. Roman knights are not the ones (*is*) whom the fiercest enemies can turn from the love of **liberty**. 8. I have assistance enough to carry out the measures (those things) that you decided upon.

Relative Clauses of Restriction or Proviso

A. 535. *d* (320. *d*); B. 283. 5; G. 627. R.[1]; H. 591. 3

Chap. 8. It is worth while.

1. The slaves, so far as I know, have **contributed** to the **common** safety **as much as** they could. 2. There was no freedman, provided that he had **obtained** the privilege (fortune) of **citizenship**, who did not **judge**[s] this to be his country. 3. There is no one of these men, who **loves** his country, who has not been **aroused** to (*ad*) the defence of the city. 4. Is it worth while to **mention** men **born** in a high station? 5. The labor[s] of the **poor**[s] is maintained by the tranquillity of the state[s]. 6. If the slaves contributed as much as they could, pray what would the freedmen have done? (cf. *quid . . . futūrum fuit*). 7. No one can be found[s], provided that he is fond of **ease**, who does not wish[s] his couch to be safe[s]. 8. These men, at least such as I am acquainted with, do not **dare** to defend the city. 9. Lentulus, as far as I have heard, is not fond of work.

Five Ablative Rules. What are they?

Chap. 9. The lives of all the citizens; the decision must be made.

1. My life has been **spared** that I might **perform** my **consular** duties (*sing.*). 2. I will see to it that (*ut*) your lives are spared. 3. May that vestal (of Vesta) **fire** be eternal (**172**). 4. Let us enjoy (*fruor*) the kindness of the gods. 5. There is no consul, who does his duty, who is not forgetful of himself. 6. This day we must make provision that men of all **ranks** may have one and the same feeling. 7. Let me not outstrip you in **zeal**. 8. I have done my duty as consul with the greatest zeal. 9. Let us all unite with mind and will and voice. 10. This day the decision must be made by you concerning the temples and shrines of the immortal gods.

Genitive with Verbs of Feeling or Emotion

A. 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457

Chap. 10. 1. I will now say[s] a few [words] **about** the great number of **enemies**[s] that I have made. 2. Let them **threaten**[s] me with death (death to me), I shall never **be sorry** for what I have done (my **deeds**). 3. I shall be **honored** with great **glory** for having compelled (*rel. clause*) Catiline to retire from the city. 4. Did Scipio repent of his **victories**? 5. Pompey is not ashamed (*pudet*) of his exploits. 6. I do not pity (*miseret*) the enemies of my country. 7. Grant that Scipio compelled (**169**) Hannibal to **depart** from Italy. 8. Is it a greater [deed] to **destroy** Carthage than to free Rome from the fear of **slavery**? 9. Wherefore I must undertake an **eternal** war with **desperate** men. 10. Foreign enemies do not pity us. 11. The madness of the conspirators disgusts (*taedet*) me.

Dative of Possessor

A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430

Chap. 11. At his own risk.

1. Cicero had a **province** which he neglected. 2. Grant that he **refused** (**169**) a triumph, surely you will remember his other marks of honor. 3. The republic has the **recollection** of my consulship. 4. May you never repent of your decisions. 5. My **little** son will have **protection enough** if you will remember that he is Cicero's son. 6. I have preserved the dignity of the state at my own peculiar (use *sōlus*) **risk**. 7. I am a consul who will **obey** (**155**) your **decrees**[s] **as long as** I live[s]. 8. I **commend** to you the temples of the gods, which will have your protection, if you **decide** with care and vigor. 9. Cicero had hope that he would be protected, but he was deceived. 10. The Romans had all things with which to defend (**146**) themselves.

ARCHIAS

Dative of Purpose

A. 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433

Chap. 1. If anything; that no one.

1. The liberal **arts** were a **system** of training for Cicero. 2. Why should I deny (**170**) that I have some (*aliquid*) **talent**? 3. I have had some experience (cf. *in quā . . . versātum esse*) in the **practice** of speaking[s]. 4. I **entered upon** the study of oratory (speaking) with Aulus Licinius for my **master** (*abl. abs.*). 5. This voice of mine **ought**[s] to be a **safeguard** to him. 6. Let his training in the **liberal** arts be an **advantage** to him. 7. The **precepts** of Archias are an honor (*honor*) to him. 8. The **admonitions** of Ar-

chias were an **aid** to all who **devoted** themselves to the practice of speaking. 9. The memory of this time is a **reward** for Aulus Licinius.

Substantive Clauses of Purpose

A. 563–566 (331); B. 295, 296; G. 546–549; H. 564–567, 568. 2

Chap. 2. To be at variance with.

1. Since (*cum*) the prætor is a **highly educated** man, I shall adopt a new **method** of pleading (*dīcō*). 2. I fear (*vereor*) **that** this is at variance with the **custom** of the **courts**. 3. Cicero **begged**[s] of the **jurors** to **grant** him **indulgence**. 4. Let us beg of him to speak **freely** about the **pursuit** of literature. 5. Since he is a citizen, he ought not to be excluded from the **list** of citizens. 6. I shall **cause** you to **concede** this to me. 7. If I had admitted that this **man**[s] was not a citizen, I should not have spoken[s] in his behalf. 8. Archias feared that you would not think him a man of great **refinement**.

Locative Case

A. 427. 3 (258, *c*. 2); B. 232; G. 411; H. 483, 484. 2

Chap. 3. As soon as; from boyhood; in boyhood; in the towns and at Rome; to be highly honored.

1. As soon as Archias **devoted** himself to **writing**, he **quickly** excelled[s] all others. 2. At home in boyhood let us devote (171) ourselves to composition (writing). 3. Archias was born at Antioch, a **once populous** city. 4. At Tarentum he was **presented** with citizenship. 5. Greek arts were much (*multum*) **cultivated** at Neapolis. 6. When he was (179) in Rome, a city **full** of learned **men**, he was **deemed** worthy of the acquaintance of the

Metelli. 7. He caused (*perficiō*) the Octavii to think that he was worthy of their **hospitality**. 8. At Regium, also, much respect was shown him.

Accusative of Limit or End of Motion

A. 427. 2 (258, *b*); B. 182; G. 337; H. 418. 4

Chap. 4. After a long interval; nothing but; within sixty days; before citizenship was given.

1. Heraclea was a city [possessed] of the most **favorable** privileges (17). 2. Lucullus was a man of great authority. 3. Archias came to Heraclea with Lucullus. 4. When he departed from Heraclea, he came to Rome. 5. After the **burning** of the registry he came home (*domus*). 6. Is it not **absurd** to **demand**[c] the **records**, which **everybody** knows[s] have been burned? 7. Although he went into the country (*rūs*), his **residence** was at Rome. 8. Carbo had come **into** Greece before the records were burned. 9. If the prætors go to the Italian **war**, can Archias make his declaration?

Ablative of Cause

A. 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475

Chap. 5. Why is it that? to **conduct** one's self as a citizen; up to that time.

1. Was Gabinius **troubled** at the erasure of names? 2. But was not Metellus troubled at the erasure of a **single** name? 3. We prided ourselves (*glōrior*) in the **genius** of one (*is*) who had **always** wished to be a Roman citizen. 4. He was so careful (of such diligence) that he told the prætor that he had found[c] one erasure. 5. Since he had often made his **will**, he was **rated** according to our laws[s] (3). 6. Archias wished to be a Neapolitan for the

sake (*causā*) of an **inheritance**. 7. Metellus said that Gabinius did this because of his **fickleness**. 8. Lucullus was praised for his **fidelity**.

Conditional Sentences

A. 515–517 (306–308); B. 302–304; G. 595–597; H. 574–579

Chap. 6. I am ashamed; he was ashamed; oratorical ability.

1. I ask[s] of you **why** you are so greatly charmed with Aulus Licinius. 2. Can our minds stand the **strain**, if we do not **relieve** them? 3. If we should **cultivate** our minds, we could be relieved from the **din** of the forum. 4. Why should we be **ashamed** (170) if we have devoted ourselves to these studies? 5. Who would **justly blame** you, if you should **assign** some (*aliquid*) time to **repose**? 6. If I had not wished[s] to **seek for** glory and **honor**, I should have devoted myself to ball-playing. 7. I should be ashamed if I did not **expose** myself to the danger of death[s] for your **welfare**.

Ablative of Means or Instrument

A. 409 (248. *c*. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476

Chap. 7. In my opinion; prosperity; adversity.

1. There are famous men who have not been **trained** by **literature**. 2. Shall we not **extol** with praises those men who have become **famous without learning**? 3. What? Does natural ability without learning amount to much (*multum*)? 4. All[s] these men were **aided** by learning. 5. If we **sought**[s] pleasure alone from these pursuits, still this employment of the mind would be most **refining**. 6. Prosperity is **adorned** by these studies. 7. Although men do not **delight** (*pass.*) in adversity, it surely **furnishes**

an excellent training. 8. Who doubts that (**164**) literature is **fostered** by prosperity?

Deliberative Subjunctive

A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 598, 4

Chap. 8. On the spur of the moment; to contend with one another.

1. You ought[s] to **admire** the skill and grace of Roscius, even though (*cum*, **52**) you are **rustics**. 2. Who of you is so **rude** as not to (that he does not) admire the **wonderful** movements of his **body**? 3. It seems as if we ought not to neglect Archias (we seem, etc.). 4. Shall we not **love** a man of so **divine** a nature? 5. Shall I not defend Archias in every **way**? 6. Why should we not admire this **sacred** name of poet? 7. If you should write with care and thought, you would **change** words and **ideas**. 8. Though I have spoken[s] in this new way, you have **nevertheless attended** to me diligently. 9. What was I to say about the grace of Roscius? 10. Who would not gladly (*libenter*) **claim** Homer as a fellow-citizen?

Indirect Discourse

A. 579 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 508. 2, 648 ff.; H. 641 ff.

Chap. 9. By land and sea; the sinking of the fleet; to like to hear.

1. We know[s] that Archias has devoted all his talent to celebrating the glories of our **generals**. 2. They say[s] that Archias was **agreeable** even to Caius Marius, a **rough** soldier. 3. Although it is said that Marius did not often (*saepe*) listen to **poets**, still he was glad to hear the Cimbric campaign (*rēs*) celebrated in **verse**. 4. They say[s] that Marius dearly loved Lucius Plotius

because his exploits (what he had done) were praised (49) by him. 5. We think[s] that the triumphs will be **ours**. 6. The Roman people thought that Lucullus ought[s] to be praised. 7. Themistocles said that **he** liked to hear the voice of a poet. 8. Cicero declares[s] that the genius of Archias has celebrated the **sinking** of the **fleet off** Tenedos.

Relative Clauses of Cause or Reason

A. 535. *e* (320, *e*); B. 283, 3; G. 633; H. 592

Chap. 10. 1. We think[s] that Latin (*neut. plur.*) is **read** less (*adv.*) than Greek. 2. This our Archias has written of our achievements in Greek verse (*plur.*). 3. Fortunate are we in having (who have) found[s] Archias as the **herald** of our **fame**. 4. O fortunate Alexander to have **stood** by the tomb of Achilles! 5. O fortunate young men to be able to read Cicero's orations! 6. I will **bestow** a reward upon you, but on **condition** that you do not write anything **stupid**. 7. I will give my attention to you who have written about my **exploits**. 8. The genius and **merit** of Archias are worthy (38) of a **great**[s] reward. 9. Brave men are they who are not moved by **toils** and dangers. 10. That poet is a poor [one] to whom Sulla's glory is not an incentive.

Accusative of Duration

A. 423–425 (256, 257); B. 181; G. 335, 336; H. 417

Chap. 11. All the best men, every good man; in that city in which.

1. If Archias were to write the story (*rēs gestās*) of my consulship, I should **desire**[s] no other recompense. 2. I myself have for many **years** (*annus*) been led by

the love of praise. 3. It cannot be **concealed** that Fulvius was influenced by a **desire** for **fame**, because he (51) **consecrated** to the Muses the spoils of Mars. 4. If the **incentive** to glory were taken away for a short time, even the best men would not **exert** themselves. 5. For many months (*mēnsis*) this dear friend was writing about the achievements of my consulship. 6. I confess[s] that my own love of glory is **perhaps too ardent**. 7. But[s] I have never written a treatise **on** the contempt of glory. 8. Night and day the minds of all the best men are **spurred** by incentives to glory. 9. Fulvius fought[s] for three days with the Ætolians. 10. And for many days, although a victor, he was greatly **distressed** at the sufferings (*dolor*) of the citizens.

Genitive and Ablative of Quality

A. 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440, 3. A. 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2

Chap. 12. Narrow-minded, mean-spirited; to take in good part; I am sure.

1. Are you so[s] narrow-minded as to (*rel.*) think[s] that everything is to die with you? 2. We are not so[s] mean-spirited as to wish[s] to leave no memorial (*monumentum*) of our virtues. 3. **Wherefore**, gentlemen of the jury, we **entreat** you to save a man of such talent that he is sought after by the most **distinguished** men. 4. Archias is a man of the greatest refinement. 5. Wise men think[s] that what we **do** in life is not out of our **consciousness** after death. 6. I am sure that you will **take** in good part what I have said. 7. Certainly you are not men of great[s] **severity**. 8. A man of great refinement will **approve** the custom of speaking briefly and **simply**.

THE MANILIAN LAW

Use of the Second Periphrastic Conjugation

A. 193–196, 500. 2 (129, 294. *b*); B. 115, 337. 7, *b*; G. 251; H. 237, 621. 1, 2

Chap. 1. Daily practice in speaking; **experience** in the **forum**; so great . . . as; the sight of you in full assembly.

1. **Once** I did not dare to **aspire to** this **dignity**. 2. **For** I thought that my plan[s] of life **forbade** me. 3. This plan had to be **adopted** at (from) the beginning of my career. 4. So I was obliged to **devote** my time to the defence of private persons. 5. What did the Romans think[s] of Cicero? 6. **Daily** practice in speaking **brings facility**. 7. I rejoice because I have to speak of the prowess of Cnæus Pompey. 8. No one can lack **eloquence** who speaks (155) in **such** a cause. 9. A **beginning** must be found[s]. 10. A prætor must show not only industry but authority. 11. Cicero must postpone (*verb from* dīlātiō) the **election**.

Indirect Questions

A. 573–575 (210. 2, 334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649. ii

Chap. 2. One . . . the other; from the point whence.

1. You must[s] choose a **commander** for your own sake[s] and that of the republic. 2. An **opportunity** to **seize** Asia was **offered**. 3. The Roman knights were uncertain (neg. of *certus*) what would be done. 4. The enemy have been engaged in **burning**[s] **villages**. 5. **Consider** what great things Lucullus has done. 6. Pompey alone is **feared**[s] by the enemy as no one else is. 7. What must[s] be done? 8. Do you know[s] what must be done? 9. You see what great interests are at **stake**. 10. We know what

wars our **ancestors** waged for the safety of the **allies**. 11. Lucullus's successor is not well enough **equipped** for **managing** the war. 12. If the consul had seen what was at stake, Lucullus would not have left Asia.

Clauses of Pure Result

A. 536–538 (319); B. 284; G. 552; H. 570

Chap. 3. **Desirous** of glory; **eager** for praise.

1. This **disgrace** will become so deep-seated that it cannot be **wiped out**. 2. The punishment ought[s] to be worthy of the crime. 3. He has been **reigning** now for twenty years. 4. Mithridates was so[s] eager for bloodshed (*gerund*) that he **murdered** your fellow-citizens. 5. He has **come out** from the lurking-places of Cappadocia. 6. We so conquered that the king did not **suffer** punishment. 7. We are **contending** with a king who though beaten is [still] king. 8. Both Sulla and Murena did so much that they are worthy of praise. 9. They did much, **but** they left much [undone]. 10. Your revenues were in such (*tantus*) danger that Sulla had to be **recalled** to Italy. 11. The king had suffered so many punishments that he **hid** himself for three years.

Clauses of Pure Purpose

A. 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568, 590

Chap. 4. All the time that followed; by land and sea.

1. I will **procure** armies from **whatever** nations I can (*fut.*) in order to **make** war upon you. 2. Let us devote (171) our time to **building** fleets so that we may repel all danger. 3. While (*cum*) you were **pretending** to **equip** fleets, he was sending **envoys even** to Spain. 4. Mithri-

dates carried on the war with this purpose, that we might be distracted by a **twofold contest**. 5. All these things were done that you might not be obliged to **fight**[s] two foes at a time. 6. We must not take **praise** from Lucullus (71) in order that we may give it to Pompey. 7. I will speak about Pompey that you may understand[s] what **true** glory is.

Relative Clauses with **dignus**, etc.

A. 535. *f* (320. *f*); B. 282. 3; G. 631, 1; H. 591, 7

Chap. 5. Rather abusively; infringement of liberty; the taking of life.

1. Corinth was worthy to be **called**[s] the **light** of Greece. 2. **Beware** lest you be unworthy (neg. of *dignus*) to keep what you shall **receive**. 3. **Pray**, with what **feelings** ought[s] we to bear [the fact] that (175) the king goes **unpunished**? 4. There is one man who is fit (*idōneus*) to defend our allies from the **attacks** of the enemy. 5. Can you bear the infringement of the liberty of citizens? 6. If Pompey is not worthy to be **sent** to Asia, no one (*nēmō*) is. 7. Are not Asia and Greece worthy of being defended by you? 8. Who is fit to be **asked for** as a commander?

Order of Words, Emphasis

A. 596 ff. (343 ff.); B. 348 ff.; G. 671 ff.; H. 664 ff.

NOTE. — It would be well to vary the order in some of these sentences to show varying emphasis.

Chap. 6. The question is; a cavalry **raid**.

1. **It is fitting** that you wage war for the safety of your allies. 2. Asia **easily excels**[s] the other provinces in exports. 3. Even the fear of **disaster** occasions **loss**. 4. How do you think[s] those who collect **taxes** feel when

Mithridates is near? 5. Can you **enjoy** these revenues without (*nisi*) defending those who pay them? 6. Are they not an advantage to us? 7. Other provinces are scarcely **content** with their revenues for self-defence. 8. The revenue of a **whole**[s] year has been **carried off** by a cavalry raid. 9. I will keep my **household** free, not only from misfortune, but from the fear [of it].

The Imperative

A. 448 (269); B. 281; G. 266 ff.; H. 560

Chap. 7. Some of whom . . . others of whom; it is the part of wisdom; it is of slight consequence (85).

1. The tax farmers cannot **lose** their investments without (*ut nōn*) **dragging** others into the same calamity. 2. **Consult** for the interests of the other **orders**. 3. It can never be the part of wisdom to have much **money invested** at Rome. 4. Look out for your **credit**, since the revenues are the **sinews** of the state. 5. **Keep** in memory what Lucullus has **taught** us because it is of great importance. 6. Protect us from this danger. 7. **Bend your energies** to this war with all devotion. 8. Be assured (*imv. fut.* of *sciō*) that **very many** have lost much property.

Indirect Discourse

A. 580 (336. 2); B. 314; G. 343. 2; H. 642

Chap. 8. To speak briefly; so much praise as; praise enough.

1. Cicero said that he did not fear the **magnitude** of the war. 2. I do not **disregard** those things which ought[s] to be provided for. 3. I think that all will **bestow** upon Lucullus **as much** praise as **is due** to him. 4. He was a man of courage, a scholar, and[s] a great[s] commander.

5. I hope (*spērō*) that large and well-equipped fleet will be **defeated**[s] and **sunk**. 6. How much praise do you think is due to a wise man? 7. The king went as a **suppliant** to other[s] kings. 8. Lucullus so[s] carried on the war that your **tributaries** were **untouched**. 9. The king said that he had been **despoiled** of his **ancestral** kingdom. 10. I am of the opinion that you have been praised enough.

Dum with Present Indicative

A. 556 (276. *e*); B. 293; G. 570; H. 533. 4

Chap. 9. The famous Medea; in some measure.

1. The question was asked how the **rest**[s] of the war could be serious. 2. While Mithridates in his flight (*pres. part.*) was **scattering gold** and **silver**, our army was following him. 3. While he was **fleeing** from Pontus, our army was **collecting** the **beautiful** things which he left behind (*part.*). 4. Many barbarian tribes thought[s] that the Romans would **plunder** their sacred shrine. 5. While these **tribes** were agitated with a new cause of alarm, our army was getting homesick. 6. It **generally** happens[s] that **kings** are moved to pity by the broken fortunes of other[s] kings. 7. While Medea fled, her father pursued. 8. While I was saying these things, an attack was made upon our army. 9. While Lucullus was **discharging** the soldiers, the king **renewed** the war.

Relative Clauses of Characteristic

A. 535, *a* (320, *a*); B. 283. 1, 2; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 1

Chap. 10. On the choice of a commander; men of the present time.

1. There are men who have read about **more** wars, but none who have waged more. 2. I have said[s] that the

war is **necessary** by its very nature. 3. What is there which can surpass the prowess of Cnæus Pompey? 4. **It remains** for us to choose (that we choose) a commander for this war. 5. Can any one doubt (use *dubium*) who the **man** is? 6. Pompey is the only man who was commander of a great army in early **youth**. 7. We have one general who will **train** his soldiers in the **knowledge** of war. 8. Besides (*praetereā*), there is no one who is himself more **skilled** in military science (*gen.*). 9. Nothing that lies (*part.*) in **military** experience can escape the genius of this man. 10. O that we might have (172) him for a commander! 11. Would that others also had been trained by victories and triumphs!

Ablative with dīgnus and indīgnus

A. 418. *b* (245. *a*, 1); B. 226, 2; G. 397, 2; H. 481

Chap. 11. 1. What is there that I can offer worthy of the merit of Cnæus Pompey? 2. What can I say[s] (170) that is worthy of his wisdom in providing? 3. All[s] the **good qualities** of a commander (*use adj.*) **exist** in him. 4. **How** many of our allies are deserving of the protection which they ask for? 5. Is Africa worthy of such great toil and danger? 6. When we were **burdened** by the **horrible** servile war, we sought his **aid**[s]. 7. Gaul is unworthy of the great **bloodshed** by which she has been freed. 8. His skill in defending your allies is worthy of the highest praise. 9. Who is there who has been able to make voyages in a **sea crowded** with **pirates**? 10. Who would have thought that he could rid (*līberō*) the sea of pirates in one year? 11. When Sicily was begirt on all sides with manifold dangers, he released it by the very swiftness of his course.

Deliberative Subjunctive

A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559, 4

Chap. 12. In the depth of winter; at the end of winter; in the beginning of spring; in midsummer.

1. Must we defend even our homes? 2. Shall I not **complain** that your armies cannot **cross** from Brundisium **except** in winter? 3. Shall I **state** that your fleet was captured and crushed **almost**[s] before your eyes (you looking on)? 4. Are you ignorant that a consul of the Roman people had been put in command of that fleet? 5. Such was the **celerity** of Pompey that in a very short time there was no pirate **ship** upon the sea. 6. Shall I not mention that he **added** Cilicia to the empire of the Roman people? 7. Shall I **pass over** the zeal with which your consuls undertook the war?

Ablative of Quality

A. 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2

Chap. 13. A little while ago; a refuge from winter; a refuge for avarice.

1. I have spoken of Pompey's excellence in war (*use the gerund*). 2. But there are **other**[s] virtues in this man that I have not mentioned. 3. Pompey is a man of the highest **integrity**. 4. Let us consider what **self-control** commanders ought[s] to have. 5. **Learn** from a **comparison** with (of) others[s] how great is his **honesty**. 6. Consider of how great talent he is. 7. If you are not **strict** in judging[s], you will not wish[s] others to be strict judges. 8. Do you think[s] that our commanders have always been men of great refinement? 9. They surely (*profectō*) have been men of the greatest **avarice** and **greed**.

Result Clauses with quīn

A. 558, *a*, N.[2] (319. *d*, 332. *g*): B. 298; G. 555, 556; H. 594. ii, 595, 596

Chap. 14. Difficult to say.

1. No one (*nēmō*) can **doubt** that other[s] commanders are **delayed** by avarice or **pleasure**. 2. These things never called Pompey from his **determined** course. 3. He did not **even go to see** statues and **pictures**. 4. Now **at last** men do not doubt that Romans once had this **self-control**. 5. Pompey is so courteous (*use a noun*) that even the **lowest** have **access** to him. 6. We do not doubt that his honesty was **deemed** most sacred. 7. This remarkable general cannot be hindered (*dēterreō*) from **finishing** the war. 8. Does **any one**[s] doubt that the conquered[s] esteem his **kindness**? 9. Many do not refuse (*recūsō*) to believe that he **descended** from heaven.

Use of the First Periphrastic Conjugation

A. 193–196, 498. *a* (129, 293. *a*); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236, 531

Chap. 15. Not to say more; on the day on which; in the nick of time.

1. Certainly no one doubts that **prestige** is going to have great influence in this war. 2. I am not going to tell you how much the allies fear Mithridates. 3. What the enemy[s] think of Pompey has a great deal to do with (*pertineō ad*) conducting this war. 4. Whose exploits were ever more **illustrious** than Pompey's? 5. The greatest[s] fertility of the soil (fields) could hardly have **caused such** cheapness of grain as did the hope in (of) this one man. 6. Very much against my will I am now to **remind** you of the disaster received in Pontus. 7. He will easily defend with his army[s] the allies who **call for** him

as a commander (34). 8. The Roman people **in a body** will crowd the forum and **fill** the temples. 9. Tigranes is about to threaten[s] Asia with large forces.

Gerund and Gerundive Constructions

A. 503 ff. (296 ff.); B. 338 ff.; G. 427 ff.; H. 625 ff.

Chap. 16. It remains for me to speak; at home and in the field; so many and such great things . . . as.

1. **The fact that** (175) the Cretans wished to **surrender** to Pompey **shows**[s] how great is his ability in the management of affairs. 2. Can you not now **determine** how powerful his prestige will be? 3. I shall speak[s] timidly about extending our **good fortune** that my speech may not seem **odious** to the immortal gods. 4. So great a war ought[s] to be managed with the greatest care. 5. The reason for (of) sending an ambassador was because they **preferred** to **treat** with Pompey himself. 6. **Power** is increased by using that which we **already** have. 7. We are now treating of the prowess of this man, which he has devoted **to** the preservation of the republic. 8. Even the very **winds** have united (themselves) with Pompey to **extend** the power of the state. 9. There will be an end (*fīnis*) of **hesitating** when on land and sea the allies obey our great commander. 10 Nothing is more hateful than **boasting** of one's (your) achievements.

Substantive Clauses of Result

A. 568, 569 (332, *a*); B. 297; G. 553; H. 571

Chap. 17. But if; to have great weight with one; patriotic.

1. You have this **advantage also**[s] that Pompey is on the spot. 2. Why should we not **intrust** the war to him? 3. But Hortensius dissents from this **view**, that Pompey

should be **appointed** general. 4. It was necessary that his influence should have great weight **with** you. 5. But[s] he made a long speech **against** the Gabinian law[s]. 6. The greatness of the war makes (*efficiō*) us send Pompey to Asia. 7. To him alone everything must be intrusted, because he is most worthy. 8. He will bring it about that we shall really (adv. from *vērus*) **possess supreme power**. 9. It is **admitted** that Catulus is a very eminent man. 10. But facts much **more** than **words** have **refuted** his argument.

Genitive with Verbs of Feeling or Emotion

A. 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457

Chap. 18. The sea coast; the island of Delos.

1. What state is there which does not pity (*misereor*) you? 2. For **several** years **in succession** our name has **lacked**[s] dignity. 3. We are ashamed to be deprived of the Appian Way. 4. We were weary (*taedet*) of the war with the pirates. 5. Our ancestors were not ashamed to adorn this place with **naval** trophies (*tropaeum*). 6. We do not repent (*paenitet*) of the Gabinian law, because we now hold the sea far and wide. 7. Are you not ashamed **to resort to** the **island** of Delos?

Double or Disjunctive Questions

A. 334, 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458, 459; H. 380

Chap. 19. With good intent; to Pompey at his request; all of whom; out of respect, with due respect; again and again.

1. Is it more **unworthy** to disparage Gabinius or to **yield** to his authority? 2. Did Pompey **request**[s] or **demand**[s] that Gabinius should be **assigned** to him? 3. Will

Pompey take as lieutenant [the man] whom he wishes[s] **or not**? 4. Do you think he ought[s] to be without glory or to be **named**[s] with due respect? 5. Relying on you (9), fellow citizens, we shall **report** the matter to the senate. 6. Is it Gabinius or Lentulus who ought to be assigned to Pompey? 7. Did he plunder provinces or **establish** the safety of the Roman people?

Ablative of Degree

A. 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479

Chap. 20. In the case of Pompey; nothing new; let nothing new be done.

1. Carthage was much more **powerful** than Numantia. 2. It remains for me to **recall** the **customs**[s] of our ancestors. 3. **The longer** life is, **the** less we enjoy it. 4. If anything[s] should **happen**[s] to Pompey, on whom would you **fix** your hopes? 5. Scipio destroyed Carthage many years ago (*ante*, 182). 6. The more[s] men **accommodate** themselves to the times, the more they enjoy life. 7. If cities a great deal more powerful should threaten[s] us, would you follow custom[s] or **expediency**? 8. Recall how wars much more **difficult** were managed by Marius.

Impersonal Verbs

A. 208 (146); B. 138; G. 208; H. 302 ff.

Chap. 21. 1. Did Pompey **command** this army? He did. 2. When he was very young he was not permitted to **carry on** a **campaign**. 3. In my opinion a private person ought[s] not to be sent as a consul. 4. It greatly concerned (*interest*) the state that Pompey should govern Africa. 5. Do you think[s] that a Roman knight ought to

be sent as consul? 6. He was made consul before he was allowed (*licet*) by law[s] to hold **any**[s] other[s] **office**. 7. By a decree of the senate he was **exempted** from [the operation of] the laws. 8. It concerns me (87) that the state should be administered by consuls of high **character**.

Hortatory and Jussive Subjunctive

A. 439, 440 (266); B. 274, 275; G. 263; H. 559, 1, 2

Chap. 22. All dissenters; difficult to say.

1. Let the Roman people defend **their own** authority against these men. 2. Let them **put** this man **in command** of the war in Asia. 3. **Lest** you **act rashly**, let these men **control** your zeal by their counsel. 4. Let us obey the magistrates of the Roman people. 5. It is difficult to say[s] how many cities have been plundered under **pretence** of war. 6. Let our general listen to the **complaints** of our allies. 7. Let us not **discuss** this question (these things) with those eminent men who **differ** from us. 8. Defend your cities from the generals who wish to plunder them.

Prohibitions

A. 450 (269. *a*); B. 276; G. 263, 271. 2; H. 561

Chap. 23. To incur disgrace; with a few exceptions; you have as authority.

1. **Do not** think[s] there was any[s] treasure from which our commanders **kept** their hands. 2. Is there any **shore** that does not **demand**[s] Pompey? 3. Do not send to the war in Asia one (*is*) who cannot (155) keep his mind from the **ornaments** of **shrines**. 4. **Unless** Pompey is a man who will not enrich himself with the public funds, do

not intrust everything to him. 5. Do not send any one[s] unless you know him to be a man of the greatest **discretion**. 6. Since you have a man who is **experienced** in affairs of the greatest importance, do not think that you cannot **answer** Hortensius and Catulus. 7. Do not doubt that Curio is endowed with the greatest talent.

Subjective Genitive

A. 343. N.[1] (214); B. 199; G. 363; H. 440, 1

Chap. 24. Whatever talent I have; to be engaged in public affairs.

1. Since this is so, Caius Manilius, do not fear[s] any one's[s] **threats**. 2. I am so far from fearing the **violence** of the multitude that I shall stick to my **opinion**. 3. This I do at the request of Manilius himself. 4. So far am I from **winning** the **favor** of my fellow citizens (*cīvis*) that I have brought many **enmities** upon myself. 5. I urge you, Quirites, to put the safety of the provinces above your own interests. 6. The zeal of our allies will be a protection[s] against dangers. 7. **Protected** by the favor of the gods, let us not hesitate to incur danger.

FOR WRITTEN TRANSLATION

NOTE. — Figures in parentheses denote chapters. A superior figure (*e.g.* dare[2]) put after a word applies to that word alone; put before a word, applies to two or more immediately following. A superior s (*e.g.* guilt[s]) is a reference to the Table of Synonyms, p. 268. In the notes literal translations and idioms are printed in *italics;* the numbers refer to the Grammatical Index, p. 135, unless otherwise specified. Cf. = compare; w. = with; other abbreviations will be readily understood.

CATILINE I

(1) [1]Are you, Catiline, a man of such boundless effrontery that you are not affected by the consciousness of your guilt[s]? All these senators are aware[s] of your conspiracy, and yet you dare[2] to come even into this place, where you plot the destruction of every one of us.

Roman citizens were once [3]so public spirited that they put to death (2) [4]at once [5]men of noble birth because of a suspicion of treason; but we now delay for the [6]twentieth day even when we have[7] a decree[s] of the senate against you. Although you ought[s 8] to have been put to death long ago, I am not yet ready[9] to kill[s] you. Nay more, — I wish you to live[s] as long as there is any one who will defend[10] you.

(3) Did I not reveal all your impious plans[s] in the

[1] Give careful attention to the always important matters of Order and Emphasis; see 75, 123. [2] Audeō. [3] Use tanta virtūs. [4] Statim. [5] *From very distinguished fathers*, etc., 19. [6] See 29. [7] Mood? [8] Imperf. of oportet. [9] *Led.* [10] Subjv. of characteristic

senate? Was I mistaken in the facts or even in the day itself? By all these things you may[1] know[s] that nothing can keep[s] the voice of your conspiracy from[2] breaking forth.

(4) Did you not go to Læca's house night before last? Can you deny that certain ones here in the senate were there with you? You even said[s] that when the two knights had done[3] what they promised[3] and had killed me you would leave[s] the city. If I had not already learned[s] this, why did I shut them out when they came [4]in the morning [5]to greet me?

(5) Go forth at once, lest Manlius's camp be too long without you. Take as many as possible with you, that the dregs of the republic may be drained off. (6) Why should[6] you not go away, since disgrace and dishonor cling to your reputation and everybody hates you? The conscript fathers know[s] how many times you have tried[s] to kill[s] me and how[7] the good fortune of the Roman people thwarted you.

(7) And yet I should[8] speak[s] as if I were moved[9] by pity when I remember that all the ex-consuls vacated [10]your section of the benches on account of their fear[s] and hatred of one[11] who has repeatedly planned their murder. The country also, our common parent, recognizes[s 12] that her horror of you is well grounded and begs[s] [13]you to be gone.

(8) Although I shall not put this question to the senate, you shall know[s], nevertheless, what we think[s] of you and your atrocities. Depart from the city, you [14]wretch!

[1] *Are able.* [2] **Quīn.** [3] See **109.** [4] **Māne.** [5] See **176.** [6] **Oportet.** [7] **Quem ad modum.** [8] *Ought.* [9] See **60.** [10] *Those seats of yours.* [11] *Him.* [12] *Knows.* [13] Subjv., **147.** [14] **Perditus.**

Note the silence of these august men. Silence gives consent.

If I had ordered[8] that worthy man, Marcus Marcellus, to go into exile, the senate would with perfect justice have laid [1]violent hands on me. (9) Go straight into exile and let hatred be kindled against me. It is [2]worth the cost if only you will get out of my sight[3].

(10) [4]In spite of the fact that your frenzy is rapidly carrying you [5]to a place where you can[6] see[8] and hear only[7] scoundrels, you are delighted, and revel in that which all good men [8]must rightly call[8] highway robbery.

(11) My country now reproaches[9] me [10]for neglecting the safety of the citizens. If I permit[8] you (12) to go to the camp of Manlius, there will be no one who will deny[11] that this was better than to kill you; for we shall in this way[12] completely destroy the curse[8] of our native land.

(13) Therefore leave us, all ye base and wicked ones, on whose forehead is written hatred[13] of your fellow citizens; and may Jupiter, the protector of this beautiful city, pursue[14] you with his vengeance[15] here and hereafter.

CATILINE II

(1) At last, fellow citizens, Catiline, that monster and marvel of wickedness, cannot within this city plot the destruction of our native land. Now we need not fear

[1] Hendiadys; see grammar. [2] See 85. [3] Cōnspectus. [4] *Although.* [5] *There . . . where.* [6] Future. [7] *No one except.* [8] Sec. periph. conj. [9] Verb, same stem as querimōniam. [10] *Because I neglect*, 49. [11] Subjv. of characteristic. [12] Ratiō. [13] Invidia [14] Optative subjv. [15] *Punishments.*

that dagger, with which openly this public enemy [1]was wont to threaten us, because he has abandoned[s] Rome [2]in despair.

(2) Some one [3]may blame me because I did not kill[4] him and so[s] [5]ward off a danger which I saw long ago. O that I had been able to do this! I could not, for[6] not even all of you believed there was anything[s] [7]to fear.

(3) Remember that those whom we must fear are not the old men who are in Catiline's army, but those who have remained. Do they not know what I disclosed in the senate? (4) You all understand[s] that this is no place for mildness, but[s] yet I will allow[s] them to depart.

All these lost men, the dregs of the city, admit[s] that no atrocity has been committed without [8]their aid, — that Catiline himself associated with them intimately so that he might be able to collect his profligates from all Italy.

(5) It will be the greatest glory of my consulship if these shameless companions of Catiline — these sots and loafers — leave[9] the city which in their drunken babbling they have planned to burn[s]. Although there is no foreign enemy [10]for us to fight, [11]we must remedy the dangers which are within.

(6) If Catiline were a timid man, he would not have been able to bear the things which I revealed in the senate yesterday. How [12]can it be said[s] that I drove him into exile, when you all know that he has sent arms and standards to Manlius? (7) If Catiline were innocent, I should be a tyrant and should have to bear a storm of

[1] Imperf. of customary action, **100.** [2] Part. of **adflīgō.** [3] Potential subjv., **173.** [4] Mood? **49.** [5] Subjv., why? [6] *Because.* [7] *To be feared.* [8] *Them.* [9] Future. [10] Second periph. subjv. [11] Express in two ways. [12] Use **possum.**

odium; but he is not innocent, and in three days you will be complaining [1]because I let[s] him go away.

(8) But [2]let us speak of those who do not admit[s] themselves to be enemies[s]; of those whom I yet desire to conciliate, although they are unwilling [3]to take my advice.

First, there are the rich who are deeply in debt and who expect by the favor of Catiline that their property will be saved[4]. (9) Then there is the class of men harassed by debt, who think to obtain[s] power[s] even amid the ashes of this beautiful city. The third class is composed[5] of Sulla's colonists, who are arousing in certain[6] needy men hopes of a proscription. (10) The other[s] classes are made up of poor debtors, assassins, and shameless men, whom I shall not recall from Catiline.

(11) We are supplied with everything [7]which they lack. On one side are your consuls and generals; on the other, that exhausted gladiator; on one side, the flower and strength of all Italy; on the other, a gang of disabled outcasts. (12) Since this is the case, I have so[s] arranged that the colonies and towns can easily be defended.

Finally[s], I cannot forget that, although those whom Catiline has left[s] in the city are enemies[s], they are also citizens. To these I say, "Know that the consuls are watchful, and if you make[8] the [9]slightest attempt against your country, we shall immediately[s] detect it."

(13) Do you then, fellow citizens, enter upon this contest[10] [11]relying not on human devices but on the gods, who in person will defend this fair city [12]against the impious attacks of wicked men.

[1] See 49. [2] See 171. [3] *To listen to me.* [4] Note carefully the word in the text. [5] Omit. [6] *Some.* [7] See 18. [8] Fut. perf. [9] Note the hendiadys in text. [10] Certāmen. [11] See 9. [12] *From.*

CATILINE III

(1) Fellow citizens, the [1]especial favor of the immortal gods has snatched this fair land[2] of ours from the greatest[s] danger, and [3]has made this a day which will always be memorable[4] in the republic.

As[5] you do not know[s] how great the perils are from which this city has been saved, I must tell[s] you what (2) I [6]have been doing since[7] Catiline went away.

[8]After spending days and nights in watching, I finally learned[s] that certain Gauls [9]were going to cross the Mulvian bridge last[s] night, and that Titus Volturcius would be with[10] them and would have letters for Catiline. [11]When I had explained the matter to the praetors, they secretly led many men to the bridge and (3) arrested Volturcius and the Allobroges. [12]Gabinius, Statilius, Cethegus, and Lentulus were straightway summoned to me, and I then laid the whole matter before the senate.

(4) The Gauls and Volturcius testified that Catiline and the city leaders were about to burn[s] the city and slaughter[s] the citizens, and that Cethegus wished[s] to do this before the Saturnalia.

(5) Then the tablets of each one were brought forth and read. Although[13] Lentulus acknowledged his seal, he denied his guilt[s]; but finally, overwhelmed by the power[s] of conscience, he was forced[14] to confess[s] all that had been charged against him. His associates[15] [16]with stealthy glances at each other likewise confessed.

[1] *Greatest love.* [2] **Patria.** [3] *Caused that this day*, etc.; use **efficiō** ut, etc. [4] **Memorābilis.** [5] *Since.* [6] Subjv. [7] *From that time at which.* [8] Abl. abs. [9] Use first periph. conj. of **trānseō.** [10] **Unā cum.** [11] See **1.** [12] See **62.** [13] **Cum.** [14] **Cōgō.** [15] **Socius.** [16] Use participle.

(6) Since it seemed that the highest interests of the republic were at stake, it pleased the senate that the nine leaders in[1] this conspiracy should be placed under guard and that a thanksgiving should be decreed in my name because the republic [2]had been preserved.

(7) Now, fellow citizens, since these wicked leaders have been arrested, you [3]need not fear[3] the forces of Catiline. If I had not driven him from the city, you [4]would have had to work and watch both night and day; for so crafty and so bold is he that only the gods themselves [5]could have thwarted this accursed conspiracy. (8) For surely it is not in the power[5] of your consuls to direct[6] such momentous affairs without the aid of Jupiter, whose statue[6] was placed (9) in the forum [7]this very morning. Jupiter himself revealed to us the schemes of these impious men and took away from [8]them the minds[8] which they had tried to use not only against the state but also against the immortal gods themselves.

If we had overcome[6] these enemies[6] in battle[6], (10) you would have owed especial[9] honors to the gods. How much more are they due from you [10]who have been saved without strife and without bloodshed?

Although I, [11]under the leadership of the gods, have preserved you from cruel and indiscriminate slaughter, (11) I wish no other monument than that which can be set up in your hearts. The mute and the silent have no power to please one who hopes[12] that the story of his

[1] *Of.* [2] See **49**. [3] Use sec. periph. conj. [4] See **56**. [5] See **166**. [6] Verb from same root as **gubernātiō**. [7] *Early this very day.* [8] Dative, why? [9] **Praecipuus**. [10] Subjv., **51**. [11] Abl. abs., **1**. [12] Subjv. of characteristic, **155**.

achievements [1]will live on the pages of history and be limited only by the ends of the earth itself.

(12) And surely it is your duty[2] to see to it that these reckless and wicked men[s] do not injure the one who has protected[3] you and the state from the greatest danger. Remember, also, [4]as you go to your homes[s], to worship Jupiter, who has preserved the honor and glory of this republic, which is so dear to us all.

CATILINE IV

(1) Conscript fathers, you know that I, your consul, must bear pain, anxiety, and even the danger of death[s] itself [5]in order that you and your wives and children[s] [6]may not have to suffer[s] persecution and slaughter. (2) And yet, I beg[s] you to forget[7] me, and to look out for yourselves and the Roman people, because the immortal gods will surely reward every man [8]as he deserves. The grief and fear[s] of my family[9] compel me to guard the public safety rather than to think[s] about myself.

We must now decide about those who wish to slay[s] all who would lament[10] the ruin[s] of the Roman people. (3) Your entire[s] action[11] yesterday[12] indicated[13] that these criminals ought to be condemned. To-day I ask [14]your judgment about the fact and [15]your decision about the penalty, for we must decide before night what [16]is to be done. If you forbear[17], or if you procrastinate, you will make a great mistake.

[1] See 118. [2] Omit. [3] If subjv., why? [4] Use participle. [5] Notice that this is negative purpose. [6] See 131. [7] **Oblīviscor.** [8] Note idiom in text. [9] **Familia.** [10] See 155. [11] **Āctiō.** [12] Adj. [13] **Significō.** [14] *What you think.* [15] See note 14 for idiom. [16] See 131, 152. [17] Fut.

(4) Thus far two courses of action have been suggested[1], — one by Decimus Silanus and the other by Caius Cæsar. The former thinks that criminals should be put to death; the latter favors confiscation of property and imprisonment [2]for life, because the gods did not ordain death as[3] a punishment, but as a rest from[4] toil[s] and trouble.

(5) Now if you follow[5] Caius Cæsar's plan, I am inclined to think that I shall fear[s] popular opposition[6] less; and yet I hope that you will consult your own opinions rather than my danger. Since even the proposer of the Sempronian law[s] was himself put to death by command of the people, (6) I shall not fear[s] the charge of cruelty, if you adopt[7] the plan of Silanus. Although what can be too cruel a punishment[8] for those who wished[9] to burn[s] the city, slaughter[s] the citizens, and set up the race of the Allobroges on the ruins of the empire?

(7) There are some who are fearful that all orders [10]will not unite [11]to preserve and defend the republic, but I assure you that all men are vying with each other in patriotism[12]. (8) Even the slaves, aroused to the defence[13] of the city, shudder at the recklessness of the wretches[14] who do not devote themselves to the common safety.

Such being the case, see to it that you do not fail those who never yet[15] failed you. (9) Our country is beset by the torches and weapons of an impious conspiracy. Whether your temples and your shrines, your hearths and your homes[s], shall remain[16], or whether the whole[s] republic shall be destroyed[16], [17]it is for us to decide this very day.

[1] **Prōferō.** [2] **Sempiternus.** [3] *For the sake of.* [4] *Of.* [5] Fut. [6] *Attacks.* [7] *Follow.* [8] **Poena.** [9] Subjv., why? [10] See **148.** [11] Use **ad** with gerundive. [12] *Love of country.* [13] Gerundive. [14] *Lost ones.* [15] **Adhūc.** [16] Subjv., why? [17] See **131.**

(10) [1]The conspirators may threaten me with death, for I have incurred the eternal[s] hostility[2] of the enemies of the republic; but time will never destroy the memory of my deeds. If the glory of Scipio, of Marius, and of Pompey is imperishable, surely there will be some (11) small commendation[3] for[4] the consul who saved the state at the peril of his life.

ARCHIAS

(1) First of all, jurors, I must [5]pay the tribute which [6]I owe this Aulus Licinius. His training it was which developed my limited talents and small [7]oratorical ability. It was his genius which impelled[8] me to undertake the study of the liberal arts, and now I surely must[9] assist him to the extent of my ability.

(2) Since you are men [10]of learning, and since Archias is a poet, I shall speak of literature and of culture in a manner perhaps[11] unusual, but not, I hope, disagreeable to you.

(3) Archias was born of a noble family at Antioch. From boyhood his genius was so[s] celebrated that he was thought worthy of the hospitality of many persons both in Greece and Italy. At Rome also many distinguished men treated him with the greatest consideration[12], although he was a very young man.

(4) For many years he had a residence at Rome and afterward was enrolled as a citizen at Heraclea, but

[1] Cf. **sit Scīpiō clārus**; see **169**. [2] *Hatred.* [3] *Praise.* [4] *Of.* [5] **Referre grātiam.** [6] *Is due.* [7] **Facultās et ōrātiō.** [8] **Impellō.** [9] **Use oportet.** [10] Adj. [11] **Forsitan.** [12] **Honor.**

nevertheless this Gratius [1]brings the charge that [2]citizenship has never been granted him. Now[3] the testimony of Lucullus and of the delegates [4]from Heraclea as well as (5) the records of Metellus, prove that Archias was duly[5] enrolled and that he made his declaration before the prætor. Do not, therefore, jurors, reject this man, who has always wished[6] to be a Roman citizen[7].

(6) Do you ask why the studies of this poet delight me so much? Because they refresh my mind wearied with daily strife; because by them my [8]power of oratory is increased; and because they place before me the illustrious men whom the most famous authors have portrayed in their works.

(7) I admit[8] that these eminent men were not all highly educated; for natural ability is so[8] remarkable [9]a quality that many have become eminent in letters, arts[10], or arms[8] without formal education. But nevertheless both natural ability and learning are needed[11] for the moulding and development of the loftiest character[12].

(8) This Aulus Licinius is a poet,—one of those whom a divine spirit inspires. He is, therefore, a gift of the gods to us and worthy of our special[13] love and honor.

Let the people of Salamis claim[14] Homer for their own; (9) Archias is ours. His verses, which celebrate the glory of the Roman people, we [15]delight to hear. He honors not only Lucullus, who sunk the enemy's fleet off Tenedos, but all to whom the Roman name and fame are dear.

[1] **Crīminor.** [2] Ind. disc. [3] **Autem.** [4] Adj. [5] **Rīte.** [6] Two ways. [7] Omit. [8] Note the hendiadys. [9] Omit "a quality." [10] **Ars.** [11] Use **opus est, 13.** [12] **Virtūs.** [13] **Singulāris.** [14] Jussive subjv., **171.** [15] Note the idiom.

(10) Why did Alexander the Great have so many historians with him? Why did our own Pompey think Theophanes worthy of a reward? Because they knew[6] that if[1] there were no[1] heralds of their prowess, body and fame [2]would both be buried in the same tomb. (11) Love of glory then[3] is the strongest incentive[4] to effort[5], not only for those who affect[6] to despise it, but for you, for me, for all of us. I confess that I myself desire no other reward for[7] the toils and anxieties of my consulship than[8] the memory of my deeds.

(12) It is indeed true that I may know[8] nothing of [9]all this after death, but now the thought and hope [10]of knowing [11]give me very great satisfaction.

Therefore, let there be such approval[12] of this man that the Roman people may seem to hold him in the honor which is due to his modesty, his dignity, and his genius.

THE MANILIAN LAW

(1) Fellow citizens, never before have I ventured to address[13] you from this renowned and beautiful spot. But now, since you have seen fit to confer upon me the authority of a prætor, [14]it affords me much satisfaction to [15]consider with you a subject of such importance[16] as the prowess of Cnæus Pompey.

(2) Two kings are warring against us, and our greatest [17]sources of revenue are in danger. [18]Besides this, your

[1] **Nisi.** [2] Use **fore ut, 76.** [3] **Igitur.** [4] **Incitāmentum.** [5] *Labors.* [6] **Simulō.** [7] *Of.* [8] *Except.* [9] *These things.* [10] Omit "of knowing." [11] *Please me very much.* [12] **Adprobātiō.** [13] **Adloquor.** [14] *I will very gladly.* [15] *Speak with you about.* [16] **Gravitās.** [17] **Vectīgal.** [18] **Praetereā.**

commander is about to return to Rome, and some one must be chosen [1]to succeed him.

(3) This new commander must wipe out a disgrace which for twenty-three years has clung to the name of the Roman people. It was this same Mithridates who slaughtered[s] so many Roman citizens, and who now is meddling with your tributaries. (4) This same foe it was who forced[2] you to make war in Asia and Spain at the same time. It was the prowess of Pompey and Lucullus which then averted the danger and preserved[3] the glory of our empire.

(5) Our ancestors [4]would not tolerate the smallest encroachment[5] upon our sovereignty, while[6] we neglect the king who has taken the lives of our citizens. There seems to be only one man who can check the attacks of our adversaries, and that is Cnæus Pompey. (6) Furthermore, Asia, which we must now defend, is your greatest source of revenue; and, unless you defend it from even the fear of disaster, you will lose the income of a whole year. For this reason you must protect the publicans, whose interests are in danger.

(7) These men are the very foundation of the state, and their misfortune will surely be the [7]misfortune of us all. [8]If payment should be interfered with in Asia, the financial system at Rome would be involved, and the same shock would overthrow them both.[9]

(8) Great praise is due Lucullus because under his leadership the enemies'[8] fleets and armies were destroyed, the king put[10] to flight, and our revenues and allies de-

[1] Not. inf. [2] Cōgō. [3] Servō. [4] See 100. [5] Iniūria inlāta. [6] Omit. [7] *Our misfortune of all.* [8] See 54. [9] Ambō. [10] Coniciō.

fended. (9) [1]If Lucullus had been able to capture[2] the king, the war would [3]no longer be a great one; but now Mithridates, [4]although once[5] conquered, has been assisted by so many tribes and nations that Glabrio, our new general, must undertake a struggle with a powerful and victorious foe.

(10) It seems then that we must put in charge of this war [6]some one who has all the qualities of a great commander, who has been a soldier from his youth, and whose experience in warfare has been extensive[7] and successful.[8] (11) That Cnæus Pompey is [9]such a man, many lands freed from dreadful danger by his prowess and many ports once[10] swarming with pirates are witnesses.

(12) Only a short time ago you, whose ancestors used to make war far from home[s], had to contend[s] with pirates at the mouth of the Tiber. Whose valor is it which in so short a time has swept[11] the freebooters from the sea and has given to us hope [12]in place of universal despair?

(13) [13]If we compare Pompey with other generals, we shall understand how great his genius is. No sale[14] of centurionships, no lust for public money, has ever in Pompey's case brought disaster upon us[15]; nor have his armies ever harmed our friends or allies. (14) So great[s] is his self-control that foreign nations have begun to understand that our ancestors excelled[s] in power[s] because they were like[16] Pompey, — not only men of exceptional valor, but also of the highest honor.

[1] See 55. [2] Comprehendō. [3] Nōn diūtius. [4] See 124. [5] Semel. [6] Aliquis. [7] Amplus. [8] Fēlīcitās should suggest the adj. [9] Use an adj. [10] Quondam. [11] Dēpellō. [12] Prō [13] See 53. [14] Vēnditiō. [15] See 67. [16] Similis; see 63.

(15) This opinion[8] of him has reached men in all parts of the world[1], and all are deeply impressed by the influence of his name. What would Mithridates have done if he had not been restrained by the approach of Pompey? (16) Men even in remote regions consider him our most powerful and most fortunate[2] citizen. Will you, his fellow citizens, hesitate to intrust[3] this great war to one upon whom the gods themselves seem to have bestowed the valor and good fortune of Scipio, of Marius, and of all our great commanders?

(17) But, you say, Hortensius differs from me in this matter, although he admits[8] the truth of what I have said. But he also opposed the Gabinian law, although the pirates had closed all our provinces, captured our prætors, and prevented us from transacting business on land and sea. (18) [4]Nay more, they were so well equipped that we were in danger even on the Appian way and ashamed[5] to think of the naval exploits[6] of our ancestors. (19) If the Roman people had complied with his wishes, should we now exercise control over all races and nations? Since this great change[7] has been brought about by the Gabinian law, who will hesitate [8]to appoint Gabinius[9] as lieutenant[9] in a war [10]undertaken as a result of his efforts?

(20) Catulus also differs from me in this matter,— Catulus, whom anything new greatly disturbs. But did he ever [11]hear of Scipio and of Marius,— of the many wars they waged and the many unprecedented things which were done in their cases? (21) Indeed, if we

[1] **Orbis terrārum.** [2] Adj. from **fortūna.** [3] See 164. [4] **Immō vērō.** [5] See **33.** [6] **Rēs gestae.** [7] **Commūtātiō rērum.** [8] Inf. or subjv. [9] See **35.** [10] Use **auctor.** [11] **Audiō dē.**

were looking for new things, in whose case could we find[s] so many as in the case of him who from his youth has conducted himself [1]so valiantly that not one but many laws[s] have had to be relaxed for the good[2] of the state?

(22) Let us then beware lest the Roman people consider it unjust [3]for us to make objection to Cnæus Pompey, who has already, in the war with the pirates, brought dignity and safety to the whole world. If you knew how self-controlled[4] this man is, you would understand[s] why he is asked for by many wealthy cities; for neither shrines nor homes are safe from injustice and caprice [5]on the part of our magistrates, and the approach of our armies, we hear, is regarded[6] as a calamity.[7]

(23) We must then intrust this war to one who can not only control[s] his army but also hold[s] his own desires in check. The seacoast and all our provinces ask for a man of the highest integrity and judge[s] Cnæus Pompey to be the greatest[s] of all our commanders, not only in military genius but also in discretion and strength of character.

(24) In view of all these things, let us sanction the opinion of Caius Manilius and put Cnæus Pompey in charge of this war. For such[9] are his influence, honesty, and reliability that, with the gods as leaders, he surely will finish this great task[10] with honor to the state and glory to the Roman people.

[1] *With such valor.* [2] Use **causa**. [3] **Ut** clause or inf. [4] Use a noun. [5] *Of.* [6] **Habeō**. [7] See 121. [8] Note the zeugma here. [9] *So great.* [10] *Work*[s].

PART III

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW WITH VOCABULARY

ROMAN FORUM (from a recent photograph)

GRAMMATICAL REVIEW

NOTE. — The grammars referred to are Allen and Greenough's (A.), Bennett's (B.), Gildersleeve's (G.), and Harkness's (H.). References in parentheses are to the old edition. A comma means "and," ff. = "and following," cf. = "compare." A superior s (*e.g.* first[s]) refers to the Table of Synonyms, p. 253. In the footnotes, cross references to the sections of this part (*e.g.* 23. 3) will be found.

1. General Rules applying to Order, Arrangement, Emphasis, etc.: A. 343–346; B. 348–351; G. 671–687; H. 664–685.

NOTE. — These rules should be frequently read and constantly put in practice.

LESSON I

AGREEMENT (THE FOUR CONCORDS)

2. 1. **Agreement of Noun in Apposition or as Predicate.** A. 281, 282, *c*, *d*, 302, *e*, 283 (183, 184, *b*, *c*, *d*, 185, *a*, *b*); B. 167–169; G. 205, 206, 320, 321, 386, R.[1], 411. R. 3; H. 393, 7.

2. **Agreement of Adjective with Noun.** A. 285, 286, *a*, *b*, 287, 1–4, *a*, 296, *a* (186, *a*, *b*, 187. *a*, *d*, 195. *d*); B. 234, 235. 1. 2, 246. 5; G. 211. 5, 285, 286. 1. 2. 3, 287; H. 394, 395, 1, 2.

3. **Agreement of Relative with Antecedent.** A. 305, 306, *b*, N. (198, 199, *b*, N.); B. 250. 2, 251. 2; G. 614. 3, (*a*), (*b*); H. 396, 397, 398. 1, 2.

4. **Agreement of Verb with Subject.** A. 316, 317, *a*, *d* (204, 205, *a*, *c*, 1); B. 254. 1, 4; G. 211, R.[1], *a*, R.[6]; H. 388, 389, 1, 391, 392, 1, 2, 3.

EXAMPLES

3. 1. **Nātūra, optima dux** — *nature, the best guide.*

2. **Athēnae, omnium doctrīnārum inventrīcēs** — *Athens, discoverer of all branches of learning.*

3. **Antiochiæ, celebrī quondam urbe** — *at Antioch, a once populous city.*

4. **Pater et māter mortuī sunt** — *father and mother are dead.*

5. **Habētur vir ēgregius Paulus** — *Paulus is regarded as an extraordinary man.*

6. **Archiae ingenium et virtūs praemiō sunt dīgna** — *the genius and merit of Archias are worthy of reward.*

7. **Labor voluptāsque sunt dissimilia** — *labor and pleasure are unlike* (*i.e.* dissimilar things).

8. **Ego quī vōbīs urbem restituī** — *I who have restored the city to you.*

9. **Gladiī ac sīcae quae dēprehendimus** — *the swords and daggers that we captured.*

10. **Nostra quī adsumus salūs** — *the safety of us who are present.*

11. **Corinthus, lūmen Graeciae extīnctum est** — *Corinth, the light of Greece, was extinguished.*

12. **Māgna multitūdō tēla coniciēbant** — *a great crowd were hurling darts.*

Remarks

4. 1. When an exception to any of the four rules of concord occurs, it is usually due to the attraction of the nearer or to the mastery of the sense over the grammatical form; cf. **3.** 10, 11, 12.

2. With subjects of different persons or different genders the predicate usually agrees with the strongest, sometimes with the nearest. The first person is stronger than the second, the second than the third. In general the masculine gender is stronger than

the feminine, the feminine is stronger than the neuter, but with inanimate things the neuter is the strongest; cf. **3.** 4, 9.

3. As in English, an adjective may be used as a noun: **omnes,** *all men;* **praeterita,** *the past.* Such neuter adjectives are sometimes used as predicates with masculine and feminine subjects; cf. **3.** 7.

Exercise I

5. 1. Cicero was chosen consul. 2. Cicero when[1] consul crushed the conspiracy of Catiline. 3. Duilius was the first[s][2] of the Romans to win a naval victory. 4. The she-wolf acted as a mother. 5. The Belgians were the bravest of all who inhabited[s] Gaul. 6. The good are praised, the bad are blamed. 7. You have Catiline before your eyes, — the most audacious of men. 8. My uncle and I passed an anxious and doubtful night.

6. 1. We desire[s] not so much[1] to seem as to be good. 2. If you and Tullia are well, [3]I am glad. 3. Cicero and I are well. 4. Peace and friendship were established with their neighbors[s]. 5. I will take care of the lives[4] of you whom I have led into danger. 6. Marius and Cicero were born [5]at Arpinum, a free-town[6] of Latium. 7. To Catiline even[1] from his youth slaughter, rapine, and civil discord were pleasing. 8. The victor did not[7] spare even[7] the women[s] and children[s] who were found[s] in the town. 9. You have all orders, all men, and the whole[s] Roman people [9]on the side of the consul. 10. We cannot change the past. 11. They came to Gades, which is a town of Spain. 12. This[10] they regarded as wealth, this[10] as real

[1] Omit. [2] *Duilius first* (adj.) *won.* [3] **bene est.** [4] Singular. [5] Locative. [6] Cf. **3.** 3. [7] Put the emphatic words between **nē** and **quidem.** [8] See **32.** 4. [9] *Thinking* (part. of **sentiō**) *with.* [10] Agrees with pred. noun.

fame. 13. Minerva, the goddess of wisdom, taught the Greeks to plant the olive.

LESSON II

PRONOUNS

7. 1. **Personal.** A. 295, *a*, *b* (194, *a*, *b*); B. 242, 1, 2; G. 304, 1, 3; H. 500, 4.

2. **Possessive.** A. 302, *a*, *c*, *d* (197, *a*, *c*, *d*); B. 243, 1, *a*; G. 312; H. 501.

3. **Reflexive.** A. 299 +, 300, 1, 2 (196, *a*, 1, 2, *h*); B. 244, i, ii, 5; G. 309, 1, 2; H. 502–504.

4. **Reciprocal.** A. 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1.

EXAMPLES

8. 1. **Cūr ego nōn laeter?** — *why should not* I *rejoice?*

2. **Est mihi iūcunda vestra ergā mē voluntās** — *pleasant to me is your good will towards me.*

3. **Ēdūc tēcum omnīs tuōs** — *take out with you all your friends.*

4. **Cōnservāte vōs** — *save yourselves.*

5. **Nēmō nostrum** — *no one of us.*

6. **Promīsit sē ventūrum esse** — *he promised to come* (that he would come).

7. **Suōs continēbat** — *he held his men in check.*

8. **Frātrem ēius occīdit** — *he slew his* (another man's) *brother.*

9. **Frātrem suum occīdit** — *he slew his* (own) *brother.*

10. **Copiās ēdūxit** — *he led out his troops.*

11. **Petiērunt utī sibi dē suā salūte cum eō agere licēret** — *they begged that they might be permitted to treat with him about their own safety.*

12. **Inter sē differunt** — *they differ from one another*

Remarks

9. 1. The personal pronouns used as subjects and the possessive pronouns are usually omitted except when needed for clearness, emphasis, or contrast. Cf. **8.** 1 (subj. expressed), **8.** 9 (poss. expressed), **8.** 6 (subj. omitted), and **8.** 10 (poss. omitted).

2. Some of the pronominal forms are lacking. Thus the personal pronoun of the third person is expressed by **is**; cf. **8.** 8, 11. The first and second persons of the reflexive are expressed by the forms of the personal pronoun; cf. **8.** 4; and the reciprocal pronouns are supplied by the reflexives; cf. **8.** 12.

Exercise II

10. 1. Horatius slew[s] his sister with his own hand. 2. I have exposed myself to death[s]. 3. They exchanged hostages. 4. Having encouraged each other, they made the attack. 5. Ariovistus demanded[s] that[1] Cæsar send envoys to him. 6. Cæsar sent envoys to him. 7. [2]You and I [3]make many boasts. 8. How long a letter have I written to you with my own hand!

11. 1. They surrendered themselves and all their possessions[4] to Cæsar. 2. Since[5] I cannot save myself [6]and you too, I will look out for *your* lives at least. 3. *I* have often incurred the enmity[7] of the powerful in *your* behalf. 4. Vercingetorix summoned[s] his men[4] to a council[s].

[1] **ut** w. subjv., **97.** 1. [2] Latin order: *I and you.* [3] *Boast many things.* [4] Omit. [5] **quoniam, 122.** 3. [6] *Together with you.* [7] Plural.

5. [1]These men had a contest with each other for the leadership. 6. With difficulty did our men defend the gates. 7. The chief said [2]that he would come to him (Cæsar) and would intrust [3]his own fortunes and those of the state to his protection. 8. He decided[s] to leave[s] in Gaul a very few, whose fidelity towards him he had clearly seen. 9. I[4] banished kings, you[4] are introducing tyrants. 10. We love[s] you very much, and we are confident that we are loved by you. 11. Before my arrival the report will come to you about my new joy. 12. If you also have the same hope of my good will towards you, it shall certainly never deceive you.

LESSON III

PRONOUNS

12. 1. **Relative.** (For agreement see **2.** 3.) A. 307, *a–c*, 308, *d* (200, 201, *c*); B. 251, 2–4, *a*; G. 616, 620; H. 399, 3, 510, 683. 2, N.

2. **Demonstrative and Determinative.** A. 296–298 (100–102, 195); B. 246–249; G. 305–311; H. 505–509.

3. **Indefinite.** A. 309–314 (104, 105, 202, 7); B. 252; G. 313–319; H. 512–515.

4. **Interrogative.** A. 148, 152 (104–106); B. 90; G. 106; H. 511.

EXAMPLES

13. 1. **Iī** (**eōrum**, etc.) **quī flūmen trānsierant** — *those* (of those, etc.) *who had crossed the river.*

[1] Use the dat. of possessor, **42.** 2. [2] Indirect discourse, **147.** 2.
[3] *His and the state's fortunes.* [4] Observe the contrast and see **9.** 1.

2. **Quae urbs est omnium pulcherrima, ea dēfendētur.** — *this city, which is the most beautiful of all, will be defended* (which city . . . this).

3. **Prōvincia ēius est haec sīcut illa nostra** — *this is his province just as that is ours.*

4. **Hī in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent** — *the latter are under arms; the former stay at home.*

5. **Mēdēa illa** — *the famous Medea.*

6. **Ipse est Dumnorix** — *Dumnorix is the very man.*

7. **Sē ipsī interficiunt** — *they kill themselves.*

8. **Dīxī ego īdem** — *I also* (the same one) *said.*

9. **Quaeret quispiam** — *some one will ask.*

10. **Hōc fēcērunt sine ūllō perīculō** — *they did this without any danger.*

11. **Neque repertus est quisquam** — *and no one* (nor any one) *was found.*

12. **Optimum est domum suam quemque revertī** — *it is best for each to return to his own home.*

13. **Quis tū es?** — *who are you?*

Remarks

14. 1. Do not confound the two meanings of *self*: **se**, reflexive, and **ipse**, intensive.

2. In Latin the relative cannot be omitted as in English in such sentences as, "the book you gave me," **liber quem mihi dedistī.**

3. Notice that there are adverbs of the first, second, and third person corresponding to the use of **hic, iste, ille**, respectively; *e.g.* **hīc**, *here* (near the speaker); **istīc**, *there* (near the person addressed); **illīc**, *there* (remote from either).

4. **Quisquam** and **ūllus** are used in negative sentences and sentences implying a negative; the one is substantive, the other adjective.

The following pronouns are arranged in the order of decreasing definiteness: **quīdam, nōn nūllus, aliquis, quispiam, quis.**

Exercise III

15. 1. The story you told me was an old[s] one[1]. 2. One[2] of the consuls lost an army, the other[s] sold one[1]. 3. It is one[3] thing to slander, another[s] to accuse. 4. A certain woman had two sons. 5. [4]If any one was wise, he was. 6. Some withdrew into the cities, others into the forests. 7. Everybody loves himself. 8. At your approach[5], Catiline, those benches near you were vacated. 9. Who was more famous in Greece than Themistocles[6]?

16. 1. Mummius destroyed Corinth, which was the most splendid city in[7] Greece. 2. [8]That part of the army[s] which arrived first[s] at the river built a bridge. 3. The famous Marius loved[s] the man[9] by whose genius [10]his exploits were celebrated. 4. The enemy[s] caught sight of some men[1] disembarking. 5. [11]And no one visits Britain except traders, and nothing is known even[12] to them except the seacoast. 6. Patience is a remedy for any pain whatever. 7. A tyrant neither loves[s] any one nor is loved by any one. 8. If anything more serious happens[13], they will demand an account from you. 9. Demosthenes and Cicero were famous orators, the former a Greek, the latter a Roman. 10. Why do you run after this wretched booty, [14]when you might be the most fortunate[1] of men? 11. Cæsar and Pompey in the beginning[5] were friends; but in the civil war[15] the latter was defeated[s] by the former.

[1] Omit. [2] Alter. [3] Alius. [4] Expressed with one verb at the end. [5] See 72. 1. [6] See 57. 4. [7] *Of.* [8] Put the rel. first, and cf. 13. 2. [9] Is. [10] *Those things which he had done.* [11] *Nor any one.* [12] Use ipse. [13] Fut. perf. [14] *To whom it is permitted to be.* [15] Abl. of time.

LESSON IV

THE GENITIVE

17. 1. **General Rule.** A. 342 (213); B. 195; G. 360; H. 439.

2. **Subjective Genitive.** A. 341, N.[1] (213. 1, 214); B. 199; G. 363, 1; H. 440. 1.

3. **Possessive Genitive.** A. 343, *a–c* (214, *a*, 1, 2, *c*, *d*); B. 198, 3; G. 362, 366; H. 439, 440. 1, N.[2]

4. **Appositional Genitive.** A. 343, *d* (214. *f*); B. 202; G. 361; H. 440. 4.

5. **Descriptive Genitive** (*of Quality*). A. 345, *b* (215, *b*); B. 203; G. 365, 2; H. 440. 3.

6. **Partitive Genitive** (*of the Whole*). A. 346, *a*, *c* (216, *a*, *c*); B. 201, 1, 2; G. 367–372; H. 440. 5, 441–443.

EXAMPLES

18. 1. **Facta virōrum** — *the deeds of men.*

2. **Per agrum Sēquanōrum** — *through the territory of the Sequani.*

3. **Haec domus est patris meī** — *this house is my father's.*

4. **Est cōnsulis prōvidēre** — *it is the consul's* (duty) *to provide.*

5. **Virtūs continentiae** — *the virtue of self-control.*

6. **Sunt hominēs māgnae virtūtis** — *they are men of great valor.*

7. **Fossa trium pedum**, *a ditch three feet deep.*

8. **Nihil vīnī** — *no wine.*

9. **Quis nostrum?** — *who of us?*

10. **Ūnus mīlitum** (better **ex mīlitibus**), *one of the soldiers.*

Remarks

19. 1. In translating into Latin be sure to grasp the thought and not to think merely of the words.

2. A part is sometimes expressed by certain adjectives denoting order in time or place: **summus mōns** — *the highest part of the mountain.* So **reliquus**, etc.

3. The adjective **omnis** is never followed by the partitive genitive. "All of us" is expressed by **nōs omnēs**.

Exercise IV

20. 1. Cicero was an orator of the greatest eloquence. 2. We took[1] a journey of several days. 3. Some wisdom. 4. You seem to have[2] little spirit. 5. Piles of arms were thrown from the wall[s] into the trench. 6. Who of you does not know[s] this? 7. Many of those trees were planted by my own hand. 8. The enemy[s] left a sufficient guard[s] for their camp. 9. At[3] the [4]end of this island is a fountain of sweet water. 10. Certain of the soldiers were wandering in the woods.

21. 1. Titus was a man[5] of such affability and generosity that he refused [6]nothing to any one. 2. Your letters are of the greatest weight with[7] me. 3. It is foolish[8] to discern[s] the faults of others and[5] to forget one's[9] own. 4. [10]Any[s] man may err; no one but a fool will persist in error. 5. The enemy[s] set fire to their houses, [11]so that nothing of their possessions might come into the control of the victor. 6. Trajan alone of all

[1] **Faciō**. [2] **Sum** with gen. [3] **In**. [4] Use **extrēmus**; see 19. 2. [5] Omit. [6] Literally, or *to no one anything*. [7] **Apud**. [8] Do not use an adj. [9] *His*; for case see 22. 3. [10] *It is of any one to err; of no one*, etc. [11] *Lest anything*, foll. by subjv.

the emperors was buried within the walls[4] of the city. 7. Spain was [1]the last[4] of all the provinces to be thoroughly subdued. 8. You think [2]that nothing new [3]ought to be done contrary to the customs[5] of our ancestors. 9. They encircle their winter quarters with a rampart nine feet [high] and a ditch fifteen feet [deep]. 10. All of you have often heard [2]that the city of Syracuse is the largest of Greek cities. 11. It belongs to him who gives, not to him who seeks, to name the conditions of peace.

LESSON V

THE GENITIVE

22. 1. **Objective Genitive.** A. 347, 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440. 2.

2. **Genitive with Adjectives.** A. 349, *a* (218, *a*); B. 204. 1; G. 374; H. 450. 45.

3. **Genitive with Verbs of Memory.** A. 350, 351 (219, *c*); B. 206, 207; G. 376; H. 454, 455.

4. **Genitive with Judicial Verbs.** A. 352 (220); B. 208; G. 378; H. 456.

EXAMPLES

23. 1. **Amor patriae** — *love of country.*

2. **Reī mīlitāris perītus** — *skilled in military affairs.*

3. **Vestrī memor** — *mindful of you.*

4. **Meī potēns sum** — *I am master of myself.*

5. **Reminīscere veteris incommodī** — *remember the old disaster.*

[1] Cf. 5. 3. [2] Indirect discourse, 147. 2. [3] Faciendum

6. **Oblītī salūtis meae** — *disregarding* (forgetful of) *my safety.*

7. **Tē admoneō amīcitiae nostrae** — *I remind you of our friendship.*

8. **Mē ipse inertiae condemnō** — *I condemn myself for inactivity.*

9. **Miltiadēs accusātus est prōditiōnis** — *Miltiades was accused of treason.*

Remarks

24. 1. Observe in **23.** 8, that **ipse** agrees with the subject, while in English the emphasis falls on the object. This is a common usage in Latin.

2. Compare **23.** 3 with **18.** 9, and remember that the genitives **nostrum** and **vestrum** are used only in the partitive sense.

Exercise V

25. 1. I see[s] that you will be free from all dangers. 2. Beasts are devoid of reason and speech. 3. You have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself. 4. Labienus was very skilful in the art of war. 5. The slave was accused of theft. 6. Themistocles, [1]in his absence, was condemned for treason. 7. He informed Cæsar of his design. 8. [2]This man had a house full of embossed silver. 9. The soldiers were unaccustomed to this manner of fighting.

26. 1. Catiline reminded one of his poverty, another of his cupidity. 2. But the enemy, [3]destitute of honor, are seeking a time and opportunity for fraud and

[1] Adjective. [2] Use the dat. of possessor, 42. 2. [3] *Without.*

treachery. 3. Hannibal urged his soldiers [1]to remember their former valor, [2]and not to forget their women and children[s]. 4. But after[3] he heard that he had been condemned [4]to death, he removed to Lacedæmon[5]. 5. And so, forgetful of his father's[6] command, he rushed into the fight. 6. Pythagoras calls [7]those who are eager for wisdom philosophers. 7. Moderate [8]in his eating and drinking, sparing of sleep, he trained his body among the soldiers. 8. Pyrrhus was skilled in war and desirous of nothing[9] but power[s]. 9. These services you have from me, whom you charge with treachery. 10. Cæsar said[10] that he ought[11] to be found guilty of the greatest injustice, if he did not hold[12] their lives[13] dearer [14]than his own safety.

LESSON VI

THE GENITIVE

27. 1. **Genitive with Verbs of Feeling.** A. 354, *a*, *b* (221, *a*, *b*); B. 209, 1, 2; G. 377; H. 457.

2. **Genitive with Interest and Rēfert.** A. 355, *a* (222, *a*); B. 210, 211; G. 381; H. 449.

3. **Genitive with Verbs of Plenty and Want.** A. 356 (223); B. 212; G. 383; H. 458. 2.

4. **Genitive of Price and Value.** A. 417 (252, *a*); B. 203. 4; G. 379, 380. 1, 2; H. 448, 1, 4.

[1] Purpose clause with **ut**, 97. 1. [2] **Nēve**. [3] **Postquam**; see 112. 1. [4] **Capitis**. [5] Acc. of limit, 52. 1. [6] Adjective. [7] Simply an adj. [8] *Of food and wine.* [9] *No thing.* [10] Present (historical) [11] **Dēbeō**. [12] Pres. subjv. [13] Singular. [14] See 57. 4.

EXAMPLES

28. 1. **Mē meōrum factōrum numquam paenitēbit** — *I shall never repent of my actions.*

2. **Miserēminī sociōrum** — *have compassion on your allies.*

3. **Eōrum nōs miseret** — *we pity them.*

4. **Hōs hominēs īnfāmiae suæ nōn pudet** — *these men are not ashamed of their dishonor.*

5. **Māgnopere commūnis salūtis interest** — *it greatly concerns the common safety.*

6. **Ego meā videō quid intersit** — *I see what is for my interest.*

7. **Neque rēfert cūiusquam** — *nor does it concern anyone.*

8. **Monitōris egēs** — *you need an adviser.*

9. **Parvī id ducēbat** — *he deemed it of little value.*

10. **Tantī est** — *it is worth while.*

11. **Māgnī aestimāre pecūniam** — *to attach a great value to money.*

Remarks

29. 1. The English expletives *it* and *there* are not to be expressed in Latin.

2. The English perfect active participle can be rendered literally in Latin only by deponent verbs: **hortātus**, *having encouraged.* The usual equivalents are (1) the ablative absolute with change of voice, and (2) a clause with **dum** or **cum**: **quibus rēbus cōgnitīs**, *having learned these facts;* **cum vēnisset**, *having come.*

3. Verbs of plenty and want take the ablative more often than the genitive.

The Latin has a tendency to group pronouns together, as in **28**. 1 and 6; so especially **sē** and **suus** with **quisque**; see **13**. 12 and **15**. 7.

Exercise VI

30. 1. They are weary of life. 2. I pity you. 3. [1]Do you pity me? 4. These things need greater talent and extraordinary virtue. 5. At what a price is virtue [2]to be rated! 6. For how much did you sell this field? 7. I bought the gardens for [3]just what I wished. 8. This is for the interest of both of us. 9. What does it concern him [4]where you are? 10. I am ashamed of my own foolishness.

31. 1. Atticus was never weary of any business [5]that he undertook. 2. It is incredible [4]how weary I am of this business. 3. It is of great interest to both of us [6]that I should see you. 4. You see[8] [7]that this concerns you more than me. 5. Our ancestors, conscript fathers, were lacking[8] neither in wisdom nor audacity. 6. Therefore Brutus, having addressed his men,[8] set out against the enemy, full of hope and courage. 7. You have heard [4]how much it was for the advantage of Clodius that Milo should be slain[8]. 8. What advantage was it to Milo that Clodius should be put to death? 9. There are men who are neither ashamed[9] of their own infamy nor disgusted [10]with it. 10. We pity those who do not seek our pity more than those[10] who demand it. 11. It little concerns us [4]what others do, provided that we do[11] right ourselves. 12. [4]What ignorant men say of me does not[12] concern me at all.

[1] Use the interrog. **-ne**. [2] Use the second periphrastic conj., **137**. 3. [3] *So much as*. [4] Ind. quest., **92**. 3. [5] Perf. pass. part., *undertaken*. [6] **Ut** w. subjv. [7] Acc. w. inf. [8] Omit. Hereafter the student will judge for himself whether "thing," "men," etc., are to be expressed in Latin. [9] Pres. subjv. **102**. 1. [10] Omit. [11] Pres. subjv., **122**. 2. [12] Not . . . at all, **nihil**.

LESSON VII

THE DATIVE

32. 1. **Indirect Object.** A. 361 (224); B. 187; G. 344; H. 423, 424.

2. **Dative with Transitive Verbs.** A. 362–364 (225, *a*, *b*, *d*); B. 187, i; G. 345; H. 424.

3. **Dative with Intransitive Verbs.** A. 366 (226); B. 187, ii; G. 346; H. 424.

4. **Dative with Special Verbs.** A. 367 (227); B. 187. ii. *a*; G. 346; H. 426. 1, 2.

5. **Dative with the Passive of Intransitive Verbs.** A. 372 (230); B. 187. ii. *b*; G. 346. R.[1]; H. 426. 3.

EXAMPLES

33. 1. **Mīlitibus sīgnum dedit** — *he gave a signal to the soldiers.*

2. **Mīlitibus sīgnum datum est** — *a signal was given to the soldiers.*

3. **Caesarī respondet** — *he answers Cæsar.*

4. **Caesarī respondētur** — *Cæsar is answered.*

5. **Decimae legiōnī Caesar cōnfīdēbat** — *Cæsar had confidence in the tenth legion.*

6. **Dumnorīx Helvētiīs favet** — *Dumnorix favors the Helvetians.*

7. **Eīs nocēre nōn possumus** — *we cannot injure them.*

8. **Eīs nocērī nōn potest** — *they cannot be injured* (it cannot be injured to them).

9. **Mihi invidētur** — *I am envied.*

10. **Nobīs invidētur** — *we are envied.*

Remarks

34. 1. Notice that in English the indirect object is often unaccompanied by the significant word *to: he gave me the book; he answers Cæsar.* In Latin, the dative must be used in these cases.

2. Notice also that often, where in Latin the dative of the indirect object would be used, the objective, or the objective with a preposition other than *to*, is used in English. See **33**. 5, 6.

3. It is well to remember that some verbs with similar meanings to those here classified as "special" are transitive and followed by the accusative: **laedō**, *injure*, **iubeō**, *command*, **iuvō**, *help*, and others.

Exercise VII

35. 1. Give me that book of yours. 2. Two kings were threatening[s] all Asia. 3. They showed[s] the letter to the general. 4. Children[s], obey your parents. 5. We will not be angry with this legion. 6. You will pardon my haste and the shortness of my letter. 7. Sabinus orders[1] his men to do the same thing. 8. He persuades [2]them of this. 9. Do *you* take counsel for yourselves.

36. 1. You have committed the public welfare to a watchful, not a timid man. 2. The Romans took it hard because Sertorius [3]put more confidence in the Spaniards than in themselves. 3. [4]When Manlius returned [5]to Rome, the elders went out [6]to meet him. 4. Cæsar spared all who bore arms against him. 5. I do not doubt that[7] she will please me. 6. The people had been persuaded [8]that both their former adversity and their present prosperity had happened[s] [9]through the agency of Alci-

[1] First use **imperō**, then **iubeō**. [2] *This to them.* [3] *Trusted more* (**magis**) *to*; imperf. subjv., 122. 3. [4] *To Manlius returning.* [5] See **52**. 1. [6] **Obviam**. [7] **Quīn**, w. subjv., **102**. 4. [8] Not a purpose clause. [9] *By the work.*

biades. 7. He is to be deemed[s] free who is a slave to no base passion. 8. Not only is that time of life not envied, but it is even favored. 9. Nevertheless the Treveri could not persuade any state[s] of the Germans [1]to cross the Rhine. 10. [2]No wise man ever thought[s] that a traitor [3]ought to be trusted. 11. Marcellus spared all the buildings, public and private, sacred and profane.

LESSON VIII

THE DATIVE

37. 1. **Dative with Compounds.** A. 370 (228); B. 187. iii; G. 347; H. 429.

2. **Dative of Reference, Influence, or Interest.** A. 376–378 (235, *a*, *b*); B. 188, 2. *a*, *c*; G. 352, 353; H. 425. 1, 2, 4.

3. **Ethical Dative.** A. 380 (236); B. 188. 2. *b*; G. 351; H. 432.

4. **Dative of Separation.** A. 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 347. 5; H. 427.

EXAMPLES

38. 1. **Prōvideō reī pūblicae** — *I provide for the public welfare.*

2. **Deī huic urbī praesident** — *the gods preside over this city.*

3. **Caesar hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit** — *Cæsar put Labienus in charge of the winter quarters.*

4. **Quotiēns tibi extorta est ista sīca dē manibus!** — *how often has that dagger been wrested from your hands!*

5. **Sē in cōnspectum nautīs dedit** — *he put himself in sight of the sailors* (into sight to the sailors).

[1] Not inf. [2] *No one wise.* [3] Use the second periph. conj.

6. **Trānsfīgitur scūtum Puliōnī** — *unfortunately for Pulio, his shield is pierced through,* or simply, *Pulio's shield is pierced through.*

7. **Tongilium mihi ēdūxit** — *Tongilius, I am happy to say, he did take out.*

8. **Quid sibi vult?** — *What does he mean* (wish for himself)?

9. **Honōrem dētrāxērunt hominī** — *they took the honor away from the man.*

Remarks

39. 1. Examples of the Ethical Dative in English: "He plucked *me* ope his doublet"; "I'll rhyme *you* so eight years together."

2. In the case of compound verbs, if the two parts of the verb may be separated and an acc. or an abl. be put after the preposition, the dative is used; if the two parts of the verb so combine that the preposition has an adverbial force, the acc. is used: **prospicit patriae**, *he looks out for his country;* **prospicit hostium agmen**, *he sees the line of the enemy ahead.*

3. Some of these compound verbs may have a direct object along with the indirect, as in **40.** 3.

Exercise VIII

40. 1. We will provide for your safety. 2. We were present in all these battles[s]. 3. Cæsar put a lieutenant in charge of the army[s]. 4. They were drawing near to the wall[s] and gates of the town. 5. To an eager mind nothing goes fast enough. 6. The Bituriges fell at the feet of the Gauls. 7. Why did this come into your mind[s]? 8. We had come into the sight of the enemy[s]. 9. [1]Relieve me of this fear.

[1] *Take away this fear from me.*

41. 1. While Masinissa was serving in Spain, his father died. 2. I offer myself as a leader for this war. 3. We learn not for the school but for life. 4. What then do those gilded equestrian statues mean? 5. [1]Let those[2] be silent to whom Italy is a stepmother, not a mother. 6. And so the elder brother set out for Asia as lieutenant to the younger. 7. What cannot be taken away from a brave man remains and will remain [3]to the end. 8. He not only took part in, but was at the head of, all the transactions. 9. What gold[4], what silver[4] I had, this you, Caius Verres, wrested from me. 10. No danger could befall them [5]when gathered in a body. 11. For this purpose he left[3] what soldiers[4] seemed to be sufficient. 12. The width of this forest extended a nine days' journey[6] for one[2] unincumbered. 13. But suddenly there comes to me your Caninius. 14. Many persons, when they are getting wealth, do not know for whom they are getting it or for whose sake[7] they are toiling.

LESSON IX

THE DATIVE

42. 1. **Dative of the Agent.** A. 374, *a* (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431.

2. **Dative of Possessor.** A. 373, *b* (231, *a*); B. 190; G. 349, 4; H. 430.

3. **Dative of Purpose.** A. 382, 1, 2 (233, *a*, *b*); B. 191, 1, 2; G. 356; H. 433.

4. **Dative with Adjectives.** A. 383, 384, 385, 2 (234, *a*, *d*, 2); B. 192, 1, 2, 204, 3; G. 359, N.[4]; H. 434, 435. 4.

[1] Pres. subjv. [2] Omit. [3] Expressed in the prefix of the verb.
[4] Partitive gen. [5] **Ūniversus.** [6] Acc., **47**. 5. [7] **Causā.**

EXAMPLES

43. 1. **Caesarī omnia erant agenda** — *everything had to be done by Cæsar.*

2. **Nōbīs** (**vōbīs**, etc.) **nōn exspectandum** — *we* (*you*, etc.) *must not wait.*

3. **Pater mihi est domī** — *I have a father at home.*

4. **Eī satis erit praesidī** — *he will have protection enough* (enough of protection).

5. **Gallīs māgnō erat impedīmentō** — *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls.*

6. **Decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit** — *he sent the tenth legion as a reinforcement to our men.*

7. **Omnēs ferē finitimī nōbīs sunt inimīcī** — *almost all our neighbors are hostile to us.*

8. **Castrīs idōneus locus** — *a place suitable for a camp.*

Remarks

44. 1. The genitive emphasizes the *possessor;* the dative the fact of possession. The former is generally the permanent, the latter the temporary possessor.

2. Many adjectives that take the dative are also used as nouns with the genitive : **amīcus**, **aequālis**, etc.

3. The negative **nōn** (*not*) is put immediately before the word which it modifies, but if it belongs to no one word in particular, it most often precedes the verb ; when specially emphatic, it is placed at the beginning of the sentence.

Exercise IX

45. 1. I have to do many things. 2. This one thing Cæsar lacked[s]. 3. This will be my care. 4. They

appointed[8] a day for a conference. 5. Therefore this province must be defended from calamity by you. 6. The son is like the father. 7. In a warlike state[8], more kings are like Romulus than like Numa. 8. I have lived[8] long enough either for nature or for glory. 9. What language can be found[8] adequate to [1]describe the valor of Cnæus Pompey? 10. He thought one consul enough for Italy.

46. 1. The Germans have blue eyes and yellow hair. 2. These men had a contest [2]with each other for[3] the leadership. 3. [4]Being deeply in debt, Cæsar [5]used to say that he needed[8] [6]a hundred million sesterces [7]to have nothing. 4. He hoped that the most opulent king of all Africa would be of use to him. 5. What must we do? All must labor in this cause. 6. Those in the state who have no resources always envy the well-to-do. 7. I hope this union will be a pleasure to us. 8. Death is common to every time of life. 9. Everything becomes more like a camp than a city. 10. Behind his sons walked Perses with his wife, like one stunned and stupefied. 11. I do not compare him who does these things with the greatest men, but I judge him very like a god. 12. It is indispensable for a senator to be acquainted[8] with public affairs[8]. 13. But [9]that the same man censures my sadness and my jesting, is a great proof that I was moderate in both. 14. He hoped that this messenger would be faithful to him.

[1] Omit "describe." [2] *Between themselves.* [3] **Dē.** [4] *Oppressed with debt.* [5] See **87. 3.** [6] **Mīliēs (centēna mīlia) sēstertium**; see A. 634 (379), G. App.; H. 757. N.[4] [7] **Ut** w. subjv. [8] Singular. [9] A **quod**-clause.

LESSON X

THE ACCUSATIVE

47. 1. **Direct Object of Transitive Verbs.** A. 387 (237); B. 172; G. 330; H. 404.

2. **Object of Intransitive Verbs compounded with Prepositions.** A. 388. *b* (237. *d*); B, 175. 2. *a*; G. 331; H. 406.

3. **Cognate Accusative.** A. 390, *c*, *d* (238, *b*); B. 176, 4; G. 333, 2; H. 409, 412.

4. **Adverbial Accusative.** A. 397. *a* (240, *a*, *b*); B. 176. 3; G. 333; H. 416, 2.

5. **Accusative of Extent and Duration.** A. 423, 2, 425, 407. *c* (256, 2, 257, 247. *c*); B. 181, 217. 3; G. 335, 336, 296. K[4].; H. 417, 471. 4.

EXAMPLES

48. 1. **Brūtus Caesarem percussit** — *Brutus stabbed Cæsar.*

2. **Flūmen trānsiit** — *he crossed the river.*

3. **Dūram vītam vixit** — *he lived a hard life.*

4. **Pauca respondēbō** — *I will reply briefly* (few things).

5. **Quid moror?** — *Why do I delay?*

6. **Maximam partem lacte vīvunt** — *for the most part they live on milk.*

7. **Ā flūmine oppidum abest mīlia passuum octō** — *the town is eight miles from the river.*

8. **Complūrēs diēs frūmento mīlitēs caruērunt** — *for many days the soldiers were without grain.*

Remarks

49. 1. *And . . . not* (sometimes *but . . . not*) is generally to be rendered by **neque**; when following **nē**, by **nēve.**

2. Such expressions as *the field of Marathon, the city of Rome*, are usually rendered by two substantives, one in apposition with the other.

3. The word **mīlle** is in the singular an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a noun and is declined: **mīlle passūs**, *a mile;* **mīlia passuum**, *miles.*

4. With **absum** and **dīsto** the ablative of degree of difference is sometimes used instead of the accusative.

Exercise X

50. 1. Last night[1] I dreamed a strange dream. 2. That man [2]makes the same mistakes that I do[3]. 3. What mistakes have you made? 4. Both you and I have exceeded [4]the bounds of moderation. 5. But[5] why do you argue? 6. Dionysius was tyrant of Syracuse thirty-eight years. 7. The leader of the Gauls made no reply. 8. Zama is distant from Carthage a five days' journey. 9. I give you this warning.

51. 1. They thought they should live[8] a safer life [5]under my protection. 2. Thirty tyrants surrounded Socrates, and[6] could not[6] break his spirit. 3. With a loud voice I swore a most just and noble oath. 4. Cæsar hastened through the whole Picenian territory. 5. No one can walk seven hundred miles in two days[1]. 6. Scipio inquired of the boy [7]who he was and why he was in camp

[1] Abl., 72. 1. [2] Cf. "make many boasts," 10. 7. [3] Omit.
[4] Omit "the bounds of." [5] **Meō praesidiō.** [6] See 49. 1.
[7] See 92. 3.

[1]at that age. 7. The soldiers built a mound three hundred and thirty feet wide and[2] eighty feet high. 8. The [3]field of Marathon is distant from Athens about ten miles. 9. Nor were they further than eight miles from Cæsar's winter quarters. 10. Solitude [4]is of some benefit. 11. Metellus [5]made a short address to the soldiers. 12. Not everything that we are sorry for can we justly complain of. 13. Have you, who have travelled over many lands, seen any[6] better[7] cultivated than Italy[8]? 14. You have done a remarkable deed.

LESSON XI

THE ACCUSATIVE

52. 1. **Accusative of Limit or End of Motion.** A. 426. 2, 427, 2 (258, b); B. 182; G. 337; H. 418.

2. **Accusative of Specification.** A. 397. *b*, cf. 390. N.[2] (240. *c*); B. 180. 1; G. 338, 1, 2; H. 416, 2.

3. **Two Accusatives: Same Person or Thing.** A. 392, 393 (239, 1, a); B. 177; G. 340; H. 410.

4. **Two Accusatives: Person and Thing.** A. 394, 396, c (239, 2, c, d); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411.

5. **Two Accusatives with Compounds.** A. 395 (239, 2. *b*); B. 179. 1; G. 331. R.[1]; H. 413.

6. **Accusative in Exclamations.** A. 397, *d* (240, *d*); B. 183; G. 343, i; H. 421.

For Accusative with Prepositions, see **77.** 2.
For Accusative with Infinitive, see **147.** 2.

[1] Not abl. [2] Omit. [3] See **49.** 2. [4] *Aids somewhat.* [5] Cf. **50.** n[2]. [6] Ecquis. [7] *More.* [8] See **57.** 4.

EXAMPLES

53. 1. **Dīviciācus Rōmam ad senātum vēnit** — *Diviciacus came to Rome to the senate.*

2. **Domum contendērunt** — *they hastened home.*

3. **Vir cētera ēgregius** — *a man excellent in other respects.*

4. **Ariovistus Haeduōs stīpendiāriōs fēcit** — *Ariovistus made the Hæduans tributaries.*

5. **Cicerōnem cōnsulem creāre** — *to elect Cicero consul.*

6. **Mē sententiam rogāvit** — *he asked me my opinion.*

7. **Sententiam rogātus sum** — *I was asked my opinion.*

8. **Equitātum flūmen trāiēcit** — *he threw his cavalry over the river.*

9. **Quis tē hōc cēlāre potest?** — *who can conceal this from you?*

10. **O fortūnātam rem pūblicam!** — *O fortunate republic!*

Remarks

54. 1. Some verbs of asking take the ablative of the person with a preposition, instead of the accusative: **petō** (**ab**), **quaerō** (**ex**, **ab**, **dē**), etc.

2. The place of the reciprocal pronoun is sometimes supplied by different cases of **alter** or **alius** (**55.** 2), or by **inter nōs** (**vōs**, etc.); cf. **46.** 2.

3. With names of towns and small islands, **ad** may be used to denote *towards, to the neighborhood of.*

4. A common noun accompanying the accusative of a town or island name, the two denoting the limit of motion, usually takes a preposition: **ad urbem Rōmam**, *to the city of Rome.*

Exercise XI

55. 1. Labienus sets out for Lutetia. 2. They invite one another to their homes. 3. O the enormous power[s] of error! 4. The people elected Brutus and Collatinus as their first consuls. 5. Who taught Epaminondas music? 6. He conceals nothing from us. 7. Cæsar leads all[s] his cavalry over the bridge. 8. All the cavalry was led over the bridge. 9. In all other respects I agree with Crassus.

56. 1. The ancient[s] Persians regarded the sun as the only god. 2. Socrates thought[s] himself a citizen of the whole[s] universe. 3. The Pythia directed the Athenians [1]to take Miltiades for their[2] commander. 4. Cæsar, being asked[s] his opinion, spoke [3]as follows. 5. O happy that land that [4]shall receive this man! 6. Verres [5]used to demand[s] of parents a price for the burial of their children[s]. 7. The envoys demand back from Verres the statues of Ceres and Victory. 8. Blind that I am, [6]not to have seen[s] this before! 9. Pompey took the chief around all his garrisons. 10. After the defeat [7]at Cannæ, the remains of the Roman army had fled for refuge to Canusium. 11. Marcus Livius betook himself to the country, and there stayed many years. 12. The apparition was in all respects like Mercury. 13. Alexander the Great founded two cities in India; one[8] he called[s] Nicæa, the other[8] Bucephale,[9] from the name of his horse. 14. O lucky boys [10]to have finished your task!

[1] See **97.** 1. [2] Use the dat. [3] *Words of this kind.* [4] Fut. Perf. [5] See **87.** 3. [6] *Who have not seen;* perf. subjv., **102.** 3. [7] Use adj. [8] **Alter.** [9] See the Grammar for the acc. of Greek nouns in *-e*. [10] Cf. note 6.

LESSON XII

THE ABLATIVE

57. 1. **Ablative of Separation.** A. 401, 402, *a* (243, *a–d*); B. 214, 1, 2; G. 390, 1, 2, 3; H. 461–465.

2. **Ablative of Source or Origin and Material.** A. 403, 1, 2, *a* (244, 1, 2, *a*); B. 215; G. 395, 396; H. 467, 469, 470.

3. **Ablative of the Agent.** A. 405 (246); B. 216, 1; G. 401; H. 468, 1.

4. **Ablative of Comparison.** A. 406, *a*, 407, *a*, *c* (247, *a–c*); B. 217, 1–4; G. 398; H. 471, 1, 3, 4.

EXAMPLES

58. 1. **Māgnō mē metū līberābis** — *you will free me from great fear.*

2. **Ēgredere ex urbe** — *depart from the city.*

3. **Diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat** — *he had been without food five days.*

4. **Animus excelsus omnī est līber cūrā** — *an exalted mind is free from all care.*

5. **Pīsō amplissimō genere nātus est** — *Piso sprang from a most noble family.*

6. **Nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore** — *ships made wholly of oak.*

7. **Caesar ā Brūtō et Cassiō interfectus est** — *Cæsar was killed by Brutus and Cassius.*

8. **Patria, quae mihi vītā meā multō est cārior** — (*my*) *country, which is far dearer to me than my life.*

9. **Celerius opīniōne** — *sooner than expected.*

10. **Plūs septingentī captī sunt** — *more than seven hundred were captured.*

Remarks

59. 1. The agent is properly a person, but the ablative with **ab** is sometimes used with names of personified things or qualities: **vincī ā voluptāte**. So also persons are sometimes regarded as means or instruments: **eā legiōne mīlitibusque mūrum perdūcit.**

2. An adverb modifying the verbs in English is sometimes best rendered in Latin by an adjective agreeing with the subject or object; so **prīmus**, **invītus**, **tōtus**, etc. Cf. **58.** 6, **61.** 11, and **5.** 3.

3. Completed action is sometimes expressed in English by the verb *be* and a past participle, used as an adjective, and denoting *state* or *condition*. In such cases, the perfect, pluperfect, or future perfect should be used in Latin. Cf. **60.** 5 and **61.** 11.

Exercise XII

60. 1. The shields were made of bark. 2. We know[8] that the sun is much greater than the earth. 3. These he immediately deprives of their baggage. 4. The city was destitute of defence. 5. The Belgians [1]are descended from the Germans. 6. His father had been called[8] a friend by our senate. 7. Nothing is more lovable than virtue. 8. Necessity [2]knows no law. 9. The barbarians abandon[8] the siege.

61. 1. There can be nothing honorable that is without justice. 2. Cæsar is said to be likely[3] to come sooner than he is expected. 3. Many regarded their injuries more seriously than was right. 4. Less than two thousand men out of so large an army escaped. 5. I love[8] Brutus not less than you do[4], I almost[8] said than [5]I love

[1] *Sprang from.* [2] *Lacks*, or *is without, law.* [3] *About.* [4] Omit. [5] Omit "I love."

you. 6. They seem to remove the sun from the universe who remove friendship from life. 7. Tiberius Gracchus compelled his colleague to resign his office. 8. Mercury was born of Jupiter and Maia. 9. Pleasant to me was your letter, [1]from which I knew[s] that you understood my devotion to[2] you. 10. He was framed wholly[3] of fraud and falsehood. 11. By no one of those[4] who object to this law has Lucullus been similarly praised. 12. For what is pleasanter than an old age encompassed by the studies of youth? 13. Nothing is dearer to this young man than the republic, nothing sweeter than true glory.

LESSON XIII

THE ABLATIVE

62. 1. **Ablative of Means or Instrument.** A. 409, *a*, 411, *a* (248, *c*, 243, *e*, N.); B. 218, 2, *c*; G. 401, 405, 406; H. 476, 477, ii, iii.

2. **Ablative with ūtor, etc.** A. 410 (249); B. 218, 1; G. 407; H. 477.

3. **Ablative of the Way by which.** A. 429, *a*, N. (258, *g*, N.); B. 218, 9; G. 389; H. 476.

4. **Ablative of Cause.** A. 404, *a* (245, *a*, 2); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475.

5. **Ablative of Manner.** A. 412 (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473, 3.

6. **Ablative of Accompaniment.** A. 413, *a*, *b* (248, *a*, N., *b*); B. 222; G. 392, R.[1]; H. 473, 474, 1, 2, N.[1].

[1] No prep. [2] In. [3] See 59. 2. [4] Iste.

EXAMPLES

63. 1. **Nāvēs rēmīs incitātæ sunt** — *the ships were put in motion with oars.*

2. **Tōtum montem hominibus complēvit** — *he covered the whole mountain with men.*

3. **Auctōritāte tuā nōbīs opus est** — *we have need of your authority.*

4. **Quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent** — *that they might more easily use their swords.*

5. **Aurēliā viā profectus est** — *he started by the Aurelian road.*

6. **Metellus nōminis litūrā commōtus est** — *Metellus was troubled at the erasure of a name.*

7. **Māgnō cum strepitū atque tumultū** — *with great noise and confusion.*

8. **Māgnō cursū contendere** — *to hasten with great speed.*

9. **Silentiō** (or **cum silentiō**) **ex oppidō ēgressī** — *having gone out of the town in silence.*

10. **Eō omnibus cōpiīs contendit** — *he hastened there* (thither) *with all his forces.*

Remarks

64. 1. The nouns that in themselves signify manner, **modus**, **ratiō**, and the like are used without **cum** or a qualifying adjective.

2. **Per** with the accusative is also used to denote manner: **per vim**, *violently*. When the means is a person, and recognized as such, **per** with the accusative is generally used: **per explōrātōrēs**, *by* (*through*) *scouts*. This is sometimes called "indirect agency."

3. Cause is sometimes expressed by the accusative with **ob** or **propter**: **quam ob rem**, *wherefore*; **propter timōrem**, *because of fear*.

Exercise XIII

65. 1. They are clothed with skins. 2. He threatens[8] his native land with fire and sword. 3. I saw[8] a silver Cupid with a torch. 4. Cæsar gets possession of a great number of cattle and men[8]. 5. There is need[8] of [1]speedy action. 6. They take up arms for the sake[8] of the common liberty. 7. They could in no way be united with the Hæduans. 8. I sent forward the horsemen by a shorter road. 9. Do you think you can enjoy these things[2]?

66. 1. Miltiades settled the affairs of the Chersonesus with the greatest fairness. 2. For the Greeks are pleased with those objects that we despise. 3. To live[3] happily[3] is nothing else than to live properly[3], that is, virtuously. 4. Nevertheless, all had fallen with wounds in front. 5. I burn with an incredible desire. 6. Meanwhile, Commius and [4]the rest[8] of the leaders arrive with all their forces near Alesia. 7. To me, indeed, Cnæus and Publius Scipio[5] seemed fortunate in the company of noble young men. 8. Great things are not done by [6]exertions of strength or by swiftness or quickness of body[5], but by wisdom, authority, judgment. 9. [7]May I be permitted[8] to enjoy with a tranquil mind[8] the sight of this city which I have preserved. 10. Miltiades was weak from the wounds he had received. 11. The blessings that we have[8], the light that we enjoy, and the breath that we draw, we see are given us by Jupiter. 12. Whenever[9]

[1] Use adverb and participle. [2] To be expressed. [3] Adv. [4] See 19. 2. [5] Plur. [6] Plur. of **vīs**. [7] *May it be permitted to me;* subjv., 82. 3. [8] *Use.* [9] **Cum** w. pluperf. ind.; cf. 113. 4 and 114. 1.

our cavalry sallied forth into the fields, he [1]would send out charioteers from the woods by all the roads and paths.

LESSON XIV

THE ABLATIVE

67. 1. **Ablative of Degree or Measure of Difference.** A. 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479.

2. **Ablative of Quality or Characteristic.** A. 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2.

3. **Ablative of Price.** A. 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478.

4. **Ablative of Specification or Respect.** A. 418, *a*, *b* (253, N., 245, *a*, 1); B. 226, 2; G. 397, N.[2]; H. 480, 481.

5. **Ablative Absolute.** A. 419, *a*, 420 (255, *a*, *d*); B. 227, 1, 2, 4; G. 409, 410, R.[1, 3]; H. 489. 1, 3. See also 132. 3.

EXAMPLES

68. 1. **Multō commodius vidētur** — *it seems much* (by much) *more convenient.*

2. **Paulō ante** — *a little while before* (before by a little).

3. **Adest vir summā auctōritāte** — *there is present a man of the greatest influence.*

4. **Hominēs māgnae virtūtis** — *men of great courage.* See **18.** 7.

5. **Vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmit** — *he purchased the revenues at a low price.*

6. **Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt** — *these all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws.*

[1] See **87.** 3.

7. **Mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī** — *in accordance with the custom and precedents of the Roman people.*

8. **Summā laude dignī sunt** — *they are worthy of the greatest praise.*

9. **Caesar, acceptīs litterīs, nūntium mittit** — *having received the letter* (letter having been received), *Cæsar sends a messenger.*

10. **M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus** — *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso* or *when M. and P. were consuls* (M. and P. [being] consuls).

Remarks

69. 1. Physical and external characteristics are generally expressed by the ablative; essential qualities, likewise measure and number, by the genitive.

2. With the ablative of price or value compare the genitive of indefinite value, **27.** 4.

3. Certain words, called postpositive words, regularly take the second place in the clause; viz. **autem**, **enim**, **igitur**, **quidem**, **quoque**, **tamen**, **vērō**.

Exercise XIV

70. 1. For they are men[s] not in fact, but in name. 2. A cavern of boundless depth is near by. 3. Isocrates sold a single speech for twenty talents. 4. Coriolanus had done the same thing twenty years before. 5. Quintus Pompey, two years older than I, was present. 6. The Britons have flowing hair. 7. They did nothing that was[1] unworthy of themselves[2]. 8. According to his custom Cæsar led out his forces. 9. With you for a leader, we shall conquer[s].

[1] Subjv., 102. 1. [2] **Ipse.**

71. 1. That victory cost[1] the Carthaginians much blood. 2. How long, then, shall he who has surpassed all enemies[s] in crime[s] lack the name of enemy? 3. And, in the first place, of how great integrity ought[s] a commander to be? secondly, of how great temperance in[2] all things? 4. Papirius was a man[s] preëminent not only in mental[3] force but also in bodily[3] strength. 5. Miltiades was fined[4], and the damages were assessed at fifty talents. 6. Both[5] of us are richer in unpopularity than in money. 7. Hitherto Mithridates has received no punishment worthy of his crime[s]. 8. Virtue is deserving of imitation, not of envy. 9. Publius Sempronius vowed a temple ten years before the Punic war. 10. Pompey had so far surpassed his predecessors as you have excelled[s] all men. 11. Agesilaus was of low stature and slender frame, also lame in one[6] foot. 12. Pythagoras came to Italy in the reign of Tarquin. 13. If the mind is sound and vigorous, language also is strong and manly.

LESSON XV

THE ABLATIVE. THE ROMAN CALENDAR

72. 1. **Time when or within which.** A. 423, 1, 424, *a*, *c*, *d* (256, *a*, 259, *a*); B. 230, 1, 2, 231; G. 393, R.[5]; H. 486, 487.

2. **Place in which.** A. 426, 3, 429, 1, 2 (258, *c*, *f.* 1, 2); B. 228, 1, *b*; G. 385–389; H. 483–485.

3. **Place from which.** A. 426, 1, 427, 1 (258, 1, *a*); B. 229, 1; G. 390, 1, 2, 391; H. 462+.

4. **Dates.** A. 424. *g*, 631, *a–e* (259, *e*, 376, *a–e*); B. 371, 372; G. p. 491; H. 754, 755.

NOTE. — In the Exercises, dates are to be reckoned by the Julian Calendar.

[1] **Stō** w. dat. [2] Use the prep. [3] Use a noun in the gen. [4] *Punished with money.* [5] *Each . . . is.* [6] **Alter.**

EXAMPLES

73. 1. **Cōnstitūtā diē convēnērunt** — *they assembled on the appointed day.*

2. **Eius adventū ad Haeduōs lēgātōs mīsērunt** — *on his arrival they sent envoys to the Hæduans.*

3. **Tribus proximīs annīs in rēgnum pervēnistī** — *within the last three years you came to the throne.*

4. **Omnibus Gallicīs bellīs** — *in all the Gallic wars.*

5. **In bellō** — *in war* or *in time of war.*

6. **In Galliā** — *in Gaul;* **in Ītaliā** — *in Italy.*

7. (**In**) **aliēnō locō proelium committere** — *to join battle in an unfavorable place.*

8. **Ab urbe proficīscī** — *to set out from the city.*

9. **Rōmā proficīscī** — *to set out from Rome.*

10. **Diē quīntō ante Kalendās Aprīlīs**, or a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (**ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs**) — *the fifth day before the Kalends of April, i.e.* March 28.

Remarks

74. 1. The Romans designated the year either by the names of the consuls or by the letters A.U.C. (**ab urbe conditā**, **annō urbis conditae**) with a numeral. Those who wish to date their exercises in Latin may use the customary A.D. (**annō Dominī**) for the year.

2. Verbs of *placing*, such as **pōnō**, **conlocō**, **cōnstituō**, commonly take the ablative with **in**, but **impōnō** takes the accusative with **in** or the dative.

3. With names of towns and small islands **ab** may be used to denote *from the vicinity of.*

4. If a common name, like **urbs**, **oppidum**, **īnsula**, accompanies a name of a town or small island which is in the ablative, it usually takes a preposition; *e.g.* **Rōmā ex urbe**, *from the city of Rome.*

Exercise XV

75. 1. Within four days I shall finish the work. 2. Plato died in his [1]eighty-first year. 3. Sextus Roscius did not come to Rome in many years. 4. The Germans had been invited [2]to withdraw from the Rhine. 5. I had received a letter from Rome Aug. 28. 6. They had gone from home. 7. I wrote that letter Nov. 18. 8. On the 1st of December the army was led into winter quarters. 9. Cæsar was murdered on the 15th of March.

76. 1. Swallows go away in the winter months and return in the spring. 2. In the Peloponnesian war the Athenians by the advice and authority of Alcibiades declared[a] war against the Syracusans. 3. The people summoned Numa from Cures to Rome [3]to rule as king. 4. By night and by day the two[4] camps of the enemy[s] were besieged[a]. 5. Likewise on the rest of the marches several cohorts fell in with Cæsar's army. 6. Their leaders gave orders to proclaim [5]all along the line [6]that no one should quit his post. 7. You can reach Atuatuca in three hours. 8. The [7]planet Saturn completes its course in about thirty years. 9. At daybreak he made a sally from two gates at the same time. 10. In the times of Pyrrhus, Apollo had already ceased to make verses. 11. The Thames can be forded[8] in only one place. 12. On the 31st of December he was with Cæsar in Spain. 13. This task was done on the 23d of May.

[1] *One and eightieth.* [2] Not inf. [3] Ad w. gerund, or ut w. subjv. [4] Not **duo**. [5] *On the whole line.* [6] *Lest any one*, 97. 1. [7] *Star of Saturn.* [8] *Crossed on foot* (plur.).

LESSON XVI

THE LOCATIVE. PREPOSITIONS

77. 1. **The Locative Case.** A. 427, 3, *a* (258 *c*, 2, *d*); B. 232; G. 411; H. 483, 484, 2.

2. **Prepositions with the Accusative.** A. 220, *a*, 221, 424, *e*, 432, *a* (152, *a*, 153, 259, *b*, 261, *a*); B. 141, 3, 144, 1, 2; G. 416, 412; 393 R.[1]; H. 420, 2, 485, 4, 487, 1, 2, 488, 2 (432 ff.).

3. **Prepositions with the Ablative.** A. 220, *b*, 221, 429, *b* (152, *b*, 153, 260, *b*); B. 142; G. 417; H. 490, 1, 2.

4. **Prepositions with the Accusative or Ablative.** A. 220. *c*, 221 (152. *c*, 153); B. 143; H. 420, 3.

EXAMPLES

78. 1. **Rōmae** — *at Rome;* **Tarentī** — *at Tarentum;* **Athēnīs** — *at Athens;* **Carthāginī** (or **-e**) — *at Carthage.*

2. **Ūnā ex parte** — *on one side.*

3. **Ā sinistrō cornū** — *on the left wing.*

4. **In Ītaliā** — *in Italy;* **in Ītaliam** — *into Italy.*

5. **Sub monte** — *at the foot of the mountain;* **sub montem** — *up to the mountain.*

6. **In hōc homine** — *in the case of this man.*

7. **Per hominēs idōneōs** — *by means of suitable men.*

8. **Ad** (**sub**) **vesperum** — *towards* (shortly before) *evening.*

9. **Ad** (**in**) **hunc modum** — *after this fashion, in this manner.*

10. **Apud Vergilium** — *in the writings of Vergil;* **apud Laecam** — *at Laeca's house;* **apud iūdicem** — *before, in the presence of, the judge.*

11. **In longitūdinem** — *in length.*

Remarks

79. 1. The Latin often uses a preposition implying motion, where the English uses one implying rest.

2. When a common name, like **urbs**, **oppidum**, **īnsula**, accompanies a name of a town or small island which is in the locative, and one noun is in apposition with the other, the common name usually is in the ablative with preposition: **Rōmae in urbe**—*in the city of Rome.*

3. The conjunction **-que** connects more closely than **et.**

Exercise XVI

80. 1. The poet Horace was born at Venusia. 2. These things [1]must be done at home. 3. Many well-known men have always lived[3] in the country. 4. In time of peace there is no common magistrate. 5. The legions were distributed in this manner. 6. Being[2] at Athens, I studied the Greek language. 7. Pompey set sail shortly before night. 8. The whole[8] army was sent under the yoke. 9. You were at Cicero's that night.

81. 1. Cæsar said that he [3]would rather be first[8] in that poor village than second in Rome. 2. The arms which had been fastened on the walls were found[8] on the ground. 3. Their wives and children[8] they placed in the forests. 4. Houses and country-seats were built like[4] cities. 5. Therefore, I am not going to proclaim [5]what great deeds Pompey has done[6] at home and in the field, by land and by sea. 6. Miltiades brought Lemnos under the power of the Athenians. 7. The soldiers of the

[1] Second periph. conj., 137. 3. [2] *When I was,* 112. 2. [3] *Preferred to be.* [4] *In the manner of.* [5] *How great.* [6] See 92. 3.

ninth legion came up to the hill on which the town of Ilerda was situated.[1] 8. He sent an officer to draw up his cohorts on the right flank of the enemy[s]. 9. The camp was fortified with a wall twelve feet[2] in height. 10. On the fourth of June, when I was at Brundisium, I received your letter. 11. I think I shall be at Laodicea on the 31st of July. 12. No case has been decided[s] for[3] three years except according to the will of the defendant.

LESSON XVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

82. 1. **Hortatory.** A. 439 (266); B. 274; G. 263, 1; H. 559, 1.

2. **Jussive (Hortatory).** A. 439, *a* (266, *a*); B. 275; G. 263, 2, 3; H. 559, 2.

3. **Optative.** A. 441, 442 (267, *b*); B. 279, 1, 2; G. 260–262; H. 558, 1, 2.

4. **Concessive.** A. 440 (266, *c*); B. 278; G. 264; H. 559, 3.

5. **Deliberative.** A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559, 4.

6. **Potential.** A. 445–447, 1, 2, 3, *a* (311, *a*, *b*); B. 280, 1, 2, *a*; G. 257–259; H. 552–557.

EXAMPLES

83. 1. **Hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus** — *let us kill these robbers.*

2. **Nē trānsieris flūmen** — *do not cross the river.*

3. **Aut exeant aut quiēscant** — *either let them depart or let them keep silent.*

[1] See 59. 3. [2] See 17. 5. [3] Per.

4. **Sint incolumēs, sint beātī** — *may they be safe, may they be happy.*

5. **Utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortālēs dent!** — *O that the immortal gods would give you that purpose!*

6. **Utinam Clōdius viveret!** *would that Clodius were alive!*

7. **Sit fūr** — *granted that he is a thief.*

8. **Cūr Ariovistus ab officiō discēdat?** — *why should Ariovistus fail in* (depart from) *his duty?*

9. **Forsitan quaerātis** — *perhaps you may inquire.*

10. **Velim mihi ignōscās** — *I wish you would pardon me.*

Remarks

84. 1. Prohibitions may be expressed by **nē** with the perfect subjunctive; see **83.** 2; see also **89.** 1.

2. **Velim, nōlim, mālim** may be used with a present subjunctive to express a wish that may be fulfilled; **vellem, nōllem, māllem**, with an imperfect subjunctive to express a wish that is not fulfilled; see **83.** 10, **86.** 6, and cf. **vellem adesset M. Antōnius** — *I only wish Antony were here.*

3. Notice that the subjunctive is used in questions in which deliberation is implied or in which inquiry is made with regard to the will or desire of some person, while the indicative asks for information on a matter of fact: cf. **quid agās** = *what are you to do?* while **quid agis** = *what are you doing?* and **quid agēs** = *what shall you do?*

Exercise XVII

85. 1. O that you were now in Rome! 2. Let us live[s] while we live. 3. I could wish[s] that you were at home. 4. May I die if[1] I do not[1] think[s] so! 5. What then am I

[1] If not = **nisi.**

to do? 6. Grant that Cæsar was ambitious. 7. Would that the consul had been present! 8. Let every one understand his own character. 9. Let not anything[s] new be done. 10. May the gods avert this omen!

86. 1. Let the bravest man come forward to battle. 2. [1]O that I might seem [2]to be a husband worthy of such a wife! 3. May my fellow-citizens be strong, may they be prosperous. 4. What are you to do with this man[3]? 5. Let us love[s] our country, obey the senate, neglect present rewards, and labor for the glory of posterity. 6. If anything comes[4] into your mind[s], I should like [5]to have you write. 7. O Quirites, would that you had an abundance of brave and blameless men[s]! 8. Shall we yield to this man? Shall we listen to his terms? 9. I, for my part, could wish that I might [6]make the same boast as[7] Cyrus. 10. But when the battle was finished, then indeed you might have seen[s] what[8] boldness and what determination were in Catiline's army. 11. But allow that he went to the war, that he differed not only from you, but even from his brothers. 12. Do not you, at least, fear[s] death[s].

LESSON XVIII

THE INDICATIVE. THE IMPERATIVE

87. 1. **Tenses of the Indicative.** A. 465–478 (276–281); B. 257–264; G. 227–245; H. 526–540.

[1] Regard this as an unattainable wish. [2] Omit "to be." [3] Abl. [4] Fut. [5] *That you write.* [6] Cf. 10. 7. [7] *Which.* [8] *How great.*

Special References

2. **Present.** A. 465, 466, 469, 556 (276, *a*, *d*, *e*); B. 259, 1, 4, 293, *i*; G. 227, 229, 230; H. 532, 1–3, 533, 4.

3. **Imperfect.** A. 470, 471, *a*, *b*, *c* (277, *a*, *b*, *c*); B. 260, 1–4; G. 231, 233, 234; H. 530, 534, 535.

4. **Future and Future Perfect.** A. 472, *b*, 478, N. (278, *b*, 281, R.); B. 261, 2, 264, *a*; G. 242, R.[1] 244, 2; H. 536, 540, 2.

5. **The Imperative.** A. 448, 449, *a* (269, *d*, *e*); B. 281, 1; G. 266, 267, 268, 1, 2; H. 560, 2, 4.

EXAMPLES

88. 1. **Tē iam dūdum hortor (hortābar)** — *I have (had) long been urging you.*

2. **Dum haec geruntur, nūntiātum est** — *while this was going on, word was brought.*

3. **Labor omnia vincit** — *labor overcomes all obstacles.*

4. **Eum in exsilium ēiciēbam?** — *was I trying to drive him into exile?*

5. **Sānābimur, sī volēmus** — *we shall be healed, if we wish.*

6. **Cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs** — *when you* (shall have) *come, you will find out.*

7. **Ēdūc tēcum omnīs tuōs** — *take out with you all your companions.*

8. **Vīcīnīs bonus estō** — *be good to your neighbors.*

9. **Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre** — *do not deprive these men of your aid.*

Remarks

89. 1. Prohibitions, besides being expressed by **nē** with the perfect subjunctive (see **84.** 1), may also be expressed by **nōlī** with the infinitive, or by **cavē** with the present subjunctive.

2. The present tense is often used in English where future time is implied; in such cases the future (or the future perfect) should be used in Latin; see **91.** 1, 3, 7, 12.

3. It is idiomatic Latin to put for emphasis the relative clause before its antecedent, as in **91.** 12.

Exercise XVIII

90. 1. Themistocles used to walk [1]the streets by night. 2. I have not known for a long time [2]what you are doing. 3. While these things were being done by Cæsar, the enemy were preparing to attack[s] Labienus. 4. They had long been getting their forces ready. 5. Ye gods, avengers of kings, be near. 6. Be assured that I shall come. 7. Fortune aids [3]those who dare. 8. Do not count this man among your friends. 9. Go, lictor, tie him to the stake.

91. 1. When I give the signal with my toga, then rush upon the crowd from all sides, and strike down all with the sword. 2. While I was in Sicily, no statue[s] was overthrown. 3. An action will not be right, unless the will is[4] right. 4. I have long been wishing[s] to visit Alexandria. 5. On the march, Cæsar used to go in advance sometimes on his horse, oftener on foot.[5] 6. Do not suppose that our ancestors made the republic great by [6]force of arms. 7. When you hear that I am overcome with grief, consider that I am suffering[s] the penalty of my own folly. 8. Let not an ungodly man dare to appease the anger of the gods by gifts. 9. Do not wish[s] for that which cannot be.[7] 10. [8]Now that the opportunity is offered, do you

[1] In pūblicō. [2] See 92. 3. [3] Express by the participle. [4] Fut. perf. [5] Plur. [6] Omit "force of." [7] Fīō. [8] Abl. abs.

look out for yourselves. 11. Archytas used to say that no more deadly curse than bodily pleasure was given to men [1]by nature. 12. He who crushes Antony will have finished the war. 13. Whenever[2] Verres came to a town, he was carried in a litter even to his bedchamber.

LESSON XIX

QUESTIONS. SEQUENCE OF TENSES

92. 1. **Direct Questions.** A. 330, 1, 332, *a*, *b*, 333 (210, *a*, *c*, *e*); B. 162, 1, 2; G. 453–456; H. 377, 4, 378.

2. **Double or Disjunctive Questions.** A. 334, 335 (211); B. 162, 4; G. 458, 459; H. 380, 1.

3. **Indirect Questions.** A. 330, 2, 574, 575 (210, 2, 334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649, ii.

4. **Sequence of Tenses.** A. 482–485 (285–287); B. 267, 268; G. 509 ff.; H. 543 ff.

EXAMPLES

93. 1. **Suntne haec vēra?** — *are these things true?*

2. **Rogō sintne haec vēra** — *I ask whether these things are true.*

3. **Quid proximā nocte agēbās (ēgistī)?** — *what were you doing (did you do) last night?*

4. **Rogō quid ēgeris** — *I ask what you were doing (did, had done).*

5. **Quid faciēs?** — *what shall you do?*

6. **Rogō quid factūrus sīs?** — *I ask what you will do.*

[1] Use the prep. [2] **Cum** w. pluperf. ind; cf. **66.** 12.

7. **Rogāvī quid agerēs** — *I asked what you were doing (did).*

8. **Rogāvī quid ēgissēs** — *I asked what you had done (did).*

9. **Rogāvī quid factūrus essēs** — *I asked what you would do.*

10. **Utrum haec sunt vēra an falsa?** — *are these things true or false?*

11. **Utrum haec sunt vēra annōn?** — *are these things true or not?*

12. **Rogō haecne sint vera necne** — *I ask whether these things are true or not.*

Remarks

94. 1. The common way of expressing the answer to a direct question is to repeat the word to which the question refers, with or without **nōn**; see **95.** 6; **96.** 3, 11. Sometimes single words are used, as **etiam** for *yes*, and **nōn** for *no*.

2. Learn to put the most emphatic words and clauses at the beginning of the sentence.

3. The indefinite **quis** is used for **aliquis** after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, **num**; see **96.** 9.

Exercise XIX

95. 1. What[1] is going on? 2. They asked[s] what was going on. 3. He showed[s] what[2] he wished to be done. 4. What reason was there why he should hasten to Rome? 5. I do not know[1] what the reason was. 6. Was not Cicero a very distinguished orator? Yes. 7. The enemy[s] will not fight[s], will they? 8. Shall you go or not? 9. I do not know whether I shall go or not.

[1] Plur. [2] Sing.

96. 1. I understand[s] [1]how important the matter is. 2. For it makes a great[2] difference to whom you are indebted. 3. Therefore was any[s] investigation proposed concerning the death[s] of Africanus? Certainly none. 4. What name was ever more illustrious in the world? 5. The mind[s] itself knows not what[3] the mind is. 6. What reason[4] was there why you did not follow Cæsar into Africa? 7. I am uncertain whether I am more violently impelled by the sword or by hunger. 8. It is evident that a plot was laid; by which of the two it was laid is uncertain. 9. [5]Does any other question come to trial except [6]which of the two laid a plot for the other? 10. Health is maintained by observing[7] what things are wont to do good or to do harm. 11. Does not the cause seem to you good? Yes, very good. 12. Did you estrange the minds[s] of the allies from the republic or not? 13. I can not tell[s] whether I estranged their minds or not.

LESSON XX

FINAL (PURPOSE) CLAUSES

97. 1. **Pure.** A. 530, 531, 1, N.[1] (317, 1, *a*); B. 282, 1, *a*; G. 545, 1–3; H. 568, 590.

2. **Relative.** A. 531, 2, *a* (317. 2 *b*); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 589, ii, 590.

3. **Substantive (Complementary).** A. 563, *e*, 564 (331, *e*. 2, *f*); B. 295, 1–5, 296, 1, 2; G. 546–550; H. 564–567, 568, 2.

[1] **Quantus.** [2] See **27**. 4. [3] **Quālis.** [4] Part. gen. [5] **Num quid aliud.** [6] **Uter utrī**, etc. [7] Use a noun.

EXAMPLES

98. 1. **Pōns factus est ut exercitus trādūcerētur** — *the bridge was built that the army might be led over.*

2. **Abiit nē vidēret** — *he went away that he might not see* (lest he might see).

3. **Caesar manipulōs laxāre iussit quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent** — *Cæsar ordered the maniples to open out so that they might use their swords more easily.*

4. **Caesar lēgātum mīsit quī locum dēligeret** — *Cæsar sent an officer to select* (who should select) *a place.*

5. **Quaesō ā vōbīs ut mihi dētis hanc veniam** — *I beg of you to grant me this indulgence.*

6. **Eum hortābar ut manēret** — *I was urging him to stay.*

7. **Nē facerem impedīvit** — (*it*) *prevented me from doing.*

8. **Quid obstat quō minus sit beātus?** — *what hinders his being happy?*

9. **Vereor nē eat** — *I fear that he will go.*

10 **Vereor ut eat** — *I fear that he will not go.*

Remarks

99. 1. Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing*, if negative, commonly take **quīn**, sometimes **quōminus**, with the subjunctive; if affirmative, **nē** or **quōminus** with the subjunctive. But **prohibeō** more commonly takes the infinitive.

2. **Iubeō** takes the infinitive with subject accusative, not an **ut**-clause; see **101.** 5.

3. A substantive clause used as the object of a verb becomes the subject when the verb is put in the passive: **Caesar ut cōgnōsceret postulātum est**, *Cæsar was requested to make an investigation.*

Exercise XX

100. 1. The Romans brought Cincinnatus from the plough to be dictator. 2. I pray you not to desert[s] me. 3. He is afraid[s] that the army[s] will be cut off. 4. Soldiers were sent to reconnoitre the roads. 5. What prevents[s] you from doing this? 6. I greatly fear that you will be cold in winter quarters. 7. I beg of you to write. 8. The soldiers demand[s] that the signal be given. 9. I was afraid[s] that they would not be returned. 10. He who runs a race should[1] strive to win.

101. 1. The plebs elected tribunes [2]to defend their liberty against the pride of the nobility. 2. One thing I beg of you — to spare the women and children. 3. He built a bridge across[3] the river by which to lead his troops over. 4. Nor did the hostile edict of any one prevent[s] Cicero from defending the citizens' rights.[4] 5. Cleomenes ordered[5] a signal to be given for the rest[s] to follow. 6. Cæsar told[6] Dolabella to write to me to come into Italy as soon as possible. 7. I fear that I can [7]make no return to you but tears. 8. I see that you are undertaking all labors; I fear that you will not endure[s] them. 9. A law ought[8] to be short that it may the more easily be grasped by the ignorant. 10. I am unwilling to be a praiser lest I should seem to be a flatterer. 11. The Germans crossed the Rhine [9]with the design of levying war upon the Gauls. 12. I, for my part, have always endeavored to be worthy of honor.

[1] **Dēbeō.** [2] Rel. clause. [3] **In.** [4] Sing. [5] **Iubeō.** [6] **Dīcō**; note this use of **dīcō** followed by a purpose clause. [7] *Return nothing.* [8] **Oportet.** [9] *With this design that*, etc.

LESSON XXI

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

102. 1. A. 535, *a*, *b* (320, *a*, *b*); B. 283, 1, 2; G. 631, 1, 2; H. 591, 1, 4, 5.

2. **Restriction or Proviso.** A. 535, *d* (320, *d*); B. 283, 5; G. 627, R.[1]; H. 591, 3.

3. **Cause or Concession.** A. 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592, 593, 2.

4. **Clauses with quīn.** A. 558, *a*, 559 (319, *d*, 332. *g*); B. 283, 4; G. 632; H. 595, 4.

5. **Clauses with dignus, *etc.*** A. 535, *f* (320, *f*); B. 282. 3; G. 631, 1; H. 591, 7.

For other modes of expressing concession, proviso, and cause, see **122**.

EXAMPLES

103. 1. **Sunt quī putent** — *there are some who think.*

2. **Nēmō est quī nesciat** — *there is no one who does not know.*

3. **Compertī sunt complūrēs quī in phalanga īnsilīrent** — *many were found who would jump upon the phalanx.*

4. **Gallī sunt gēns ūna quae bellum nōbīs facere possit** — *the Gauls are the only nation that can make war on us.*

5. **Quis mē est mortālis miserior quī vīvat hodiē?** — *what mortal that lives is more wretched to-day than I am?*

6. **Quod sciam** — *as far as I know.*

7. **Ō fortūnāte adulēscēns quī tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris!** — *O fortunate youth in having found a Homer as herald of your valor!*

8. **Absolvite eum, quī sē fateātur pecūniās cēpisse** — *acquit him, although he confesses that he has accepted money.*

9. **Quis est quīn cernat?** — *who is there who does not see?*

10. **Nōn erit idōneus quī ad bellum mittātur** — *he will not be a suitable person to send to the war.*

Remarks

104. 1. Distinguish between "what," interrogative, and "what" (= that which), relative.

2. Do not forget that in a relative clause the verb agrees in person and number with the pronoun which is the subject: **neque enim tū is es qui nesciās** = *for you are not such a one as not to know;* see also **105.** 8, **106.** 2, 9.

3. Recollect that the relative pronoun always comes at the beginning of its clause, not, as sometimes in English, after one or two words; see **106.** 7.

Exercise XXI

105. 1. There is no one to defend the town. 2. There are some who do not understand[8] these rules. 3. Caius is not worthy to be elected consul. 4. They did what[1] the general ordered. 5. There is no one but loves[8] the good consul. 6. You are the only one to whom these things seem true. 7. Was there any one[8] who ventured to defend Catiline? 8. I am not [2]the man to be frightened by danger of death[8].

106. 1. What is there in this case that needs[8] a defence? 2. I seem to myself to have done wrong in leaving[8] you. 3. The plays of Livius are not [3]worth reading a second time. 4. There was [4]not a wealthy house in

[1] Plur. The verb may be ind. or subjv.; with what difference of meaning? [2] **Is.** [3] **Dignus** w. rel. [4] **Nūllus.**

Sicily where[1] that man did not set up a cloth factory. 5. This town Verres discovered, — almost the only one from which he could carry nothing away. 6. As far as appears [2]in literature, Pherecydes of Syros [3]was the first to utter this opinion[s]. 7. You, Caius Cæsar, are the only one in whose victory no one has fallen unless [4]with arms in his hands. 8. There are some who think that death[s] is a departure of the soul from the body. 9. I pity you for making this man your enemy[s]. 10. Epicurus alone, so far as I know, dared to avow himself a philosopher. 11. In the fortress there was no one of all the soldiers [5]who was not wounded. 12. But nothing is troublesome provided that you do not miss it.

LESSON XXII

CONSECUTIVE (RESULT) CLAUSES

107. 1. **Pure.** A. 537, 1, *a*, 535, *c* (319, 1, *a*, 320, *c*); B. 284, 1; G. 552; H. 570, 1.

2. **Relative.** A. 537, 2, *a*, 558, *b* (319, 2, *c*); B. 284, 2–4; G. 631, 1–3, R.[1]; H. 591. 2.

3. **Substantive (Complementary).** A. 568, 569, 2, 571. *a* (332, *a*, 2, *b*); B. 297, 298; G. 553, 1–3, 554, 555; H. 571, 1–4.

EXAMPLES

108. 1. **Nōn tam imperītus sum rērum ut nōn sciam** — *I am not so ignorant of affairs as not to know.*

2. **Nēmō est tam stultus quī hōc nōn intellegat** — *no one is so stupid as not to know this.*

[1] **Ubi**, a relative adverb. [2] Abl. without prep. [3] *First* (adj.) *uttered.* [4] *Armed.* [5] Use **quīn.**

3. **Fortior est quam quī** (or **quam ut**) **mortem timeat** — *he is too brave to fear death.*

4. **Secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent** — *storms followed which* (= such that they) *kept our men in camp.*

5. **Accidit ut esset lūna plēna** — *it happened that the moon was full.*

6. **Quis dubitāre possit quīn deī immortāles hanc urbem dēfendant?** — *who can doubt that the immortal gods will defend this city?*

7. **Nē Suessiōnēs quidem dēterrēre possumus quīn cum Belgīs cōnsentiant** — *we cannot prevent even the Suessiones from making common cause with the Belgians.*

Remarks

109. 1. Notice that result clauses are often preceded by demonstrative words (such as **tam, ita, is, tālis**) which point the way to the clauses that follow; this is not so in the case of purpose clauses; see **108.** 1, 2, **110.** 1, 3, etc.

2. Be careful to distinguish between negative purpose clauses and negative result clauses; negative purpose clauses are introduced by **nē**, negative result clauses by **ut nōn**.

3. *One . . . another, some . . . others* are in Latin **alius . . . alius, aliī . . . aliī**; *the one . . . the other, the one set . . . the other set*, are **alter . . . alter, alterī . . . alterī**; see **111.** 10; also **15.** 2, 3, 6.

Exercise XXII

110. 1. I am not so suspicious as not to believe you. 2. There is no doubt that Rome is the capital of the world. 3. Innocence is that[1] state of mind which harms no one. 4. It so happened[2] that neither in this nor in

[1] **Tālis.**

the previous year was any[8] ship missing. 5. This[1] is too good to be true. 6. I have so lived[8] that I think[8] I was not born in vain[8]. 7. He used these exercises so that he came hungry to dinner. 8. His discourse flowed so freely that it faltered at no point.

111. 1. But yet I so enjoy the recollection of our friendship that I seem to have lived[8] happily because I have lived[2] with Scipio. 2. When now he was [3]on the point of getting possession of the town, a grove was set on fire. 3. Peace was granted on this condition, that all should be sent under the yoke. 4. The thing was too notorious to be kept secret. 5. He never lets a single day pass [4]without coming. 6. To the old age of Appius Claudius was added the fact[5] that he was blind. 7. It remains for us to consider what[6] the nature of these things is. 8. There was no doubt that the Romans would render aid to their good and faithful allies. 9. I cannot do [7]without sending you a letter every day. 10. It quickly came to pass that some resisted the sallies, while[5] others were breaking down the mound. 11. The army[8] [8]was in great straits, [9]even to the point that for a good many days the soldiers were without grain.

LESSON XXIII

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

112. 1. **Postquam, ubi,** *etc.* A. 542, 543, *a* (322, 324, *a*) ; B. 287. 1, 2 ; G. 561–563 ; H. 602.

[1] Plur. [2] Subjv. ; see 122. 3. [3] **In eō esset ut.** [4] *But that he comes.* [5] Omit. [6] **Quālis.** [7] Cf. note 4. [8] **Summā difficultāte adfectus.** [9] **Ūsque eō ut.**

2. **Cum.** A. 542, 545, 546 (322, 325, *a*); B. 288–289; G. 579, i, 580, 585; H. 600, i, ii, 601, 4.

3. **Dum, dōnec, and quoad.** A. 553, 555, 556 (328, 1, 2, *a*); B. 293, i–iii; G. 571, 572; H. 603, i, ii, 604, 1.

4. **Antequam and priusquam.** A. 551, *a–c* (327, *a*); B. 291, 292; G. 574–577; H. 605, i, ii.

EXAMPLES

113. 1. **Quod ubi Caesar comperit, sē in Galliam recēpit** — *when Cæsar found this out, he withdrew into Gaul.*

2. **Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit** — *after Cæsar had arrived there, he demanded hostages.*

3. **Cum hostium cōpiae nōn longē absunt, agrī cultūra dēseritur** — *when the forces of the enemy are not far off, agriculture is abandoned.*

4. **Cum rosam vīderat, tunc incipere vēr arbitrābātur** — *whenever he saw a rose, he thought spring was beginning.*

5. **Eō cum perventum esset, Caesaris adventum exspectābant** — *having arrived there, they waited for Cæsar's arrival.*

6. **Dum haec geruntur, Sabīnus in fīnīs Venellōrum pervēnit** — *while these things were going on, Sabinus arrived in the territory of the Venelli.*

7. **Dum Pompēius venīret, locum relinquere nōluit** — *till Pompey should arrive, he was unwilling to leave the spot.*

8. **Antequam ad sententiam redeō, dē mē pauca dīcam** — *before I return to the vote, I will say a little about myself.*

9. **Priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, exercitum lātius distribuit** — *before more states should conspire, he distributed the army more widely.*

Remarks

114. 1. **Cum**, *whenever*, is used in constructions of Protasis (see Conditional Sentences), and may take any tense of the indicative required by the context, but the tense is more commonly one of completed action; see **113.** 4, **116.** 3.

2. Adverbs in **-ō** on the stems of certain pronouns denote *direction toward which;* adverbs in **-ā** on these stems denote *the way by which;* **eō** = *to that place*, **eā** = *by that road, in that way;* **eōdem, eādem**; **quō, quā.**

3. In clauses containing **cum**-temporal a defining word, like **tum**, often precedes the **cum**, or is implied: **regiōnēs dīrēxit, tum cum urbem condidit** = *he traced the quarters* [*of the sky*] *at the time when he founded the city.*

4. With **meminī**, when referring to a matter of personal experience, the present infinitive is commonly used.

Exercise XXIII

115. 1. While this was going on, the enemy advanced to the wall[s]. 2. Thus all the work[s] is woven together till the regular height of a wall[s] is made up. 3. Therefore retire while there is an opportunity. 4. [1]After Cæsar had come among the Treveri, he decided[s] to cross the Rhine. 5. I told Caius, when I was last at Rome, what[2] I had heard. 6. [3]Having plundered a sanctuary, he sailed to Syracuse. 7. He arrived before Pompey should be able to know[s] it[4].

116. 1. I remember that Cato discoursed[5] with me the year before he died. 2. [1]After Cæsar had discovered[s] that the Suevi had retreated into the forests, he determined[s] not to advance further. 3. When the lot of each

[1] In this order: *Cæsar, after he,* etc. [2] **Quid.** [3] Cf. **113.** 5. [4] Omit. [5] Pres. infin.

one had fallen out, he seized his arms [1]with alacrity. 4. While the Romans were procuring these things, Saguntum was besieged[2] with the greatest violence. 5. [2]The following day the soldiers rested till the general should examine the strength[3] of the town. 6. From that time till they come[4] to the river, Cæsar promises [5]to give them grain. 7. Wherefore [6]I ask[3] this of you, judges, before I begin[6] to speak on the case itself. 8. They determine[7] [7]to try [8]every expedient sooner than have recourse to his advice. 9. You seem to me, Cæsar, to be afraid of being compelled to fight before you can deploy the rest[8] of the fleet.

LESSON XXIV

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

Definitions and Classification. A. 512, 513, 514 (304, 305); B. 301; G. 589–594; H. 572, 573.

117. 1. **First Form; Logical; Present, Past, and Future (more vivid).** A. 515, 516, 1, *a*, 518, *a* (306, 307, 1, *a*, 309, *a*); B. 302, 1, 2, 4; G. 595, 3; H. 574, 2, 578, 2.

2. **Second Form; Ideal; Future (less vivid).** A. 516, 2, *b*, *c*, *d* (307, 2, *b*, *c*, *d*); B. 303; G. 596, 1; H. 576, 1.

3. **Third Form; Unreal, Contrary to Fact.** A. 517, *a*, *c*, *d* (308, *a*, *c*, *d*); B. 304, 1, 3, *a*, *b*; G. 597, 3; H. 579, 582, 583.

4. **Conditional Comparisons.** A. 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584.

[1] Adj. [2] That is, *during the following day.* [3] Plur. of **vīs.** [4] **Veniō** used impersonally. [5] *That he would give.* [6] In this order: *from you, judges, before,* etc., *this I ask.* [7] Not infin. [8] *All things.*

EXAMPLES

118. 1. **Sī hōc facit, bene est** — *if he is doing (does) this, it is well.*

2. **Sī hōc faciēbat (fēcit), bene erat (fuit)** — *if he was doing (did) this, it was well.*

3. **Sī hōc faciet (fēcerit), bene erit** — *if he does (shall do, shall have done) this, it will be well.*

4. **Sī hōc faciat (fēcerit), bene sit** — *if he should,* or *were to, do this, it would be well.*

5. **Sī hōc faceret, bene esset** — *if he were* (now) *doing this, it would be well.*

6. **Sī hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset** — *if he had done this, it would have been well.*

7. **Sī hōc dīcās, crēditur** — *if you* (*i.e.* anyone) *say this, it is believed.*

8. **Sī Rōmae prīvātus esset, tamen is erat dēligendus** — *if he were a private citizen at Rome, still he ought to be chosen.*

9. **Absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem horrēbant, velut sī adesset** — *they shuddered at the barbarity of Ariovistus when absent, as* (they would do) *if he were present.*

Remarks

119. 1. Read again **89.** 2.

2. If the conditional act is regarded as completed before that of the apodosis begins, the future perfect is substituted for the future indicative in the apodosis, and the perfect subjunctive for the present subjunctive; see **120.** 1, **121.** 1, 2.

3. In unreal conditions, the protasis and apodosis sometimes refer to different times; then different tenses are used; see **121.** 11.

4. Do not think that such words as *might, could,* etc., should always be expressed by the subjunctive, but search for the *idea* and express that.

5. The auxiliary verbs are defective in English; therefore, where the English says *might have been*, and the like, the Latin more logically puts the main verb in the past and the infinitive in the present. (We sometimes hear in English *he had ought* for *he ought to have*); see **121.** 4, 11.

Exercise XXIV

120. 1. If I know what you [1]decide upon, I will adapt my policy especially to yours. 2. If you do not know, I pardon you. 3. If a god were to ask[s] you, what would you answer? 4. If Sestius had been slain, [2]would you have rushed to arms? 5. Wisdom would not be sought after, if it accomplished nothing. 6. As if, indeed, it were a matter for deliberation[3]! 7. If he has done wrong, let him be punished[s]. 8. He jumped out of his chair, as if he were afraid.

121. 1. If I do not now satisfy[1] Cluentius, hereafter I[4] shall have no opportunity [5]of satisfying him. 2. If you ruin[1] Murena by your votes, whither will the poor man turn? 3. Therefore[6], if the [7]magnificent games are a pleasure[8] to the people[s], it is not to be wondered at that they benefited Lucius Murena [9]in the eyes of the people. 4. The army[s] [10]might have been destroyed, if the victors had pursued. 5. They seek[s] these honors just as if they had lived[s] honorably. 6. If I should deny that I am affected with longing for Scipio[3], I should lie. 7. I am wont to praise the orations of Thucydides; but I could neither imitate them if I would[11], nor would I, if I could. 8. Pray what would you say[s], if you had conquered[s] me?

[1] Fut. perf. [2] Periphrastic of **eō**. [3] Gen. [4] Dat. of poss. [5] Gerund. [6] **Quā rē**. [7] *Magnificence of games.* [8] See **42.** 3. [9] **Apud.** [10] Use **possum**. [11] *Should wish.*

9. If the wine had not failed, we [1]should have said much severer things. 10. With such men *I* should have subdued the world [2]in a short time. 11. If he could have guarded against these[3] feuds, he would now be alive. 12. If your neighbor had a better horse than yours, should you prefer your horse or his?

LESSON XXV

CLAUSES OF CONCESSION (ADVERSATIVE) AND PROVISO. CAUSAL CLAUSES

122. 1. **Concession (quamquam, etc.).** A. 527, *a–d* (313, *a–e*); B. 309, 1–4; G. 603–607, 587; H. 585, 586, i, ii, 593, 2.

2. **Proviso (dum, etc.).** A. 528 (314); B. 310; G. 573; H. 587.

3. **Cause (quod, quia, etc.).** A. 540, 1, 2 (321, 1, 2); B. 286. 1; G. 540–542; H. 588, i, iii.

4. **Cause (cum).** A. 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598. See also **102.** 2, 3.

EXAMPLES

123. 1. **Quamquam sunt hostēs, tamen, quia sunt cīvēs, monitōs volō** — *although they are enemies, nevertheless, because they are citizens, I wish them to be warned.*

2. **Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen eō exercitum dūxit** — *although summer was now almost over, nevertheless Cæsar led his army to that place.*

3. **Illa quamvīs rīdicula essent, mihi tamen rīsum nōn mōvērunt** — *however laughable those things were, they did not move me to laughter.*

[1] Cf. 120. 4. [2] **Brevī.** [3] **Use the relative.**

4. **Quae cum ita sint** — *and since,* or *although, this is so.*

5. **Māgnō mē metū līberābis, dum modo inter mē et tē mūrus intersit** — *you will relieve me from great fear, provided that the wall is between you and me.*

6. **Paucae nātiōnēs, quod hiems suberat, obsidēs dare neglēxērunt** — *a few tribes, because winter was at hand, neglected to give hostages.* The writer's reason.

7. **Caesar questus est quod Haeduī sē nōn sublevāssent** — *Cæsar complained because the Hæduans had not relieved him.* Cæsar's reason.

8. **Quoniam semper avidī laudis fuistis, dēlenda est vōbīs illa macula** — *since you have always been eager for glory, you must wipe out that stain.*

Remarks

124. 1. **Quia** is less frequent than **quod**, and, being generally used in statements of fact, rarely takes the subjunctive. So also **quoniam** and **quandō** are seldom used to express the reason of another than the speaker or writer, and hence they generally take the indicative.

2. The tenses of the subjunctive commonly used with **dum**, **modo**, **dummodo** are the present and the imperfect, the present after a primary, the imperfect after a secondary tense.

3. It often happens that a cause or reason is expressed in English by a preposition with the present or perfect participle, as in **125.** 6 and **126.** 4. In such cases a **quod**-clause may be used in Latin.

Exercise XXV

125. 1. Although[1] the winters were early in those places, nevertheless he hastened to start for Britain. 2. However great[s] expectation may be, you will yet go

[1] **Etsī.**

beyond it. 3. Though[1] all[s] dangers threaten[s] me, I will encounter them. 4. They neglect all honorable things, provided only that they obtain[s] power[s]. 5. Though[2] you are in haste, the delay is not long. 6. He praises Africanus for having been temperate. 7. Since Cæsar had determined[s] to winter in Gaul, he ordered[s] hostages. 8. Cæsar set out for this town, because it was the largest. 9. Let them be even more, as long as they have such a leader.

126. 1. Since the gates are open, Catiline, you may depart. 2. Although[3] this[4] is said by an enemy, nevertheless it ought not to be neglected. 3. He said that he was an enemy[s] to the Athenians because by their help[s] the Ionians had taken Sardis. 4. Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth. 5. Or are you sorry[5] because I brought the army over [6]in safety[s]? 6. Although the enemy had not [7]more than six hundred horsemen, they made the attack[s]. 7. However troubled[8] men may be, still they sometimes are relieved in mind. 8. I disregarded everything, provided I obeyed my father's instructions. 9. A little afterward he proclaims that, because the consuls are absent, [9]there can be no discussion about a settlement. 10. Although[3] Cæsar knew[s] for what reason this was said, nevertheless he ordered the chief to come to him. 11. I shall never be sorry to encounter the greatest dangers in behalf of my country, provided that if anything happens to me, I am free from the reproach of rashness.

[1] **Licet**. [2] **Quamquam**. [3] **Etsī**. [4] Plur. [5] Use **paenitet**. [6] Use adj. [7] See 57. 4 and 58. 10. [8] *In troubled circumstances.* [9] *It cannot be discussed* (**agō**).

LESSON XXVI

THE INFINITIVE

127. 1. **Subject of the Infinitive.** A. 397, *e* (240, *f*); B. 184; G. 343, 2; H. 415.

The Infinitive as Subject and as Predicate. A. 452, 1, 3, 454 (270, 1, 3); B. 327, 1, 330; G. 422, 424; H. 615, 616, 1.

3. **The Infinitive with Subject Accusative.** A. 452, 459 (272, 330, A, B); B. 331, i, ii; G. 423. N.6, 527, 532, 533, 535; H. 613, 614, 565, 3.

4. **The Complementary Infinitive.** A. 456 (271); B. 328, 1; G. 423, 1, 2; H. 607.

5. **The Historical Infinitive.** A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610.

6. **Tenses of the Infinitive.** A. 486, *a*, 584, *a* (288, *a*, 336. A); B. 270, 1, 2; G. 281, 1, 2, 530, 531; H. 617–620.

EXAMPLES

128. 1. **Vīvere est cōgitāre** — *to live is to think.*

2. **Pulchrum est benefacere reī pūblicae** — *it is a noble thing to benefit the state.*

3. **Poenam sequī oportet** — *punishment ought to follow.* The phrase **poenam sequī** is subject of **oportet.**

4. **Dīcit sē venīre, vēnisse, ventūrum esse** — *he says that he is coming, came* or *has come, will come.*

5. **Dīxit sē venīre, vēnisse, ventūrum esse** — *he said that he was coming, came* or *had come, would come.*

6. **Diūtius sustinēre nōn possunt** — *they cannot hold out longer.*

7. **Scīre potuit** — *he might have known* (was able to know).

8. **Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre** — *Cæsar was demanding grain of the Hæduans.*

Remarks

129. 1. With impersonal verbs which take an infinitive as subject, the person affected is expressed as follows: with **libet, placet, vīsum est**, by the dative; with **oportet, pudet, piget, decet**, by the accusative; with **licet, necesse est**, by the dative or the accusative.

2. Recollect that the predicate adjective or substantive takes the same case as the noun or pronoun which depends upon the main verb; see **131.** 5.

3. In the case of the complementary infinitive, predicate adjectives and substantives generally take the case of the subject of the main verb: **volō esse bonus.**

Exercise XXVI

130. 1. To labor is to pray. 2. Cæsar resolved to cross the Rhine. 3. You ought[1] to do this. 4. He ordered[2] the soldiers to go out of the town. 5. To yield [3]at the right time has always been regarded as wise[4]. 6. You, Hannibal, know how to conquer[3]; you do not know how to make use of victory. 7. I feel that you have accomplished much. 8. I rejoice that these matters are settled. 9. This ought[5] to be done. 10. You may go.

Note. — It is expected that the historical infinitive will be used in two of the following sentences.

131. 1. Our ancestors wished[6] the bodies of young men to be strengthened by toil. 2. It is characteristic of a

[1] **Dēbeō.** [2] **Iubeō.** [3] **Temporī (temperī)**, adv. [4] *Of a wise man*; cf. **21.** 3, 4. [5] **Oportet.**

mind[s] well regulated both to rejoice at [1]what is good and to grieve at the opposite. 3. It is a wrong[s] to bind a Roman citizen. 4. No man [2]is at liberty to lead an army against his fatherland. 5. [2]It will not do for me to be careless in public affairs. 6. If you love[s] me, if you wish[s] to be loved by me, send me a letter. 7. Now I neither care[3] to live[s] nor can[2] I die without disgrace. 8. He found[s] that the consuls had started for Dyrrachium, and that Pompey was staying at Brundisium. 9. About the first of June he was addressing individuals, exhorting some, sounding others. 10. The envoys report to Cæsar that they are aware that the Roman people are divided into two parties. 11. Catiline meanwhile was busy in the first battle line aiding [4]those who were in distress. 12. I am much delighted[5] that you are [6]in merry mood and ready for a joke[7]. 13. You can do this task in one hour. 14. Boston, March 9.

LESSON XXVII

THE PARTICIPLE

132. 1. **Tenses of the Participle.** A. 489–491, 493 (290, *a*, *b*, *d*); B. 336, 1–4; G. 282, 283; H. 640, 1, 3, 4.

2. **Uses of the Participle.** A. 494, 495, 496, 497, *d* (291, 292, *a*, *e*); B. 337, 1, 2, 5; G. 664–668; H. 636, 4, 637, 638, 1, 2, 639.

3. **Ablative Absolute.** For references see **67.** 5.

[1] *Good things.* [2] Use **licet.** [3] Use **libet.** [4] Use the participle. [5] Use **iuvat**, impers. [6] Abl. of quality. [7] Gerund.

EXAMPLES

133. 1. **Eum discēdēns castrīs praefēcerat Caesar** — *Cæsar on his departure had put him in command of the camp.* [Time.]

2. **Hōc respōnsō datō discessit** — *having given this reply, he departed.* [Time.]

3. **Titō imperātōre Pompēii et Herculāneum urbēs obrutae sunt** — *when Titus was emperor, the cities Pompeii and Herculaneum were buried.* [Time.]

4. **Transiī Rhēnum arcessītus ā Gallīs** — *I crossed the Rhine because I was invited by the Gauls.* [Cause.]

5. **Oppidum paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāvit** — *he took the town because it had few defenders.* [Cause.]

6. **Armīs trāditīs suppliciō adficientur** — *if they give up their arms, they will be punished.* [Condition.]

7. **Oppidum paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit** — *he could not take the town, although it had few defenders.* [Concession.]

8. **Epistulam sibi commissam dētulit** — *he delivered the letter which had been intrusted to him.*

9. **Hostēs adortus prōflīgāvit** — *he attacked and routed the enemy.*

10. **Post urbem conditam, ab urbe conditā** — *after the founding of the city.*

Remarks

134. 1. Be careful not to use the present participle unless the action expressed thereby is clearly contemporaneous with that expressed by the main verb.

2. Notice the difference in meaning between the participle and the infinitive with **audiō** and the like, as in **135.** 1; **eum loquī audiō** = *I hear that he is speaking.*

3. Participles are not commonly used as substantives in the masculine and feminine singular. The neuter of the perfect participle is often used as a substantive.

Exercise XXVII

Note. — In this exercise use the participial construction wherever it is possible.

135. 1. I have often heard him speaking[s]. 2. I count nothing difficult to a lover. 3. Having said[s] this, he went off. 4. Augustus was born in the consulship of Cicero and Antonius. 5. Hannibal, having passed over the Alps, came into Italy. 6. Antiochus came to Syracuse when the defendant was prætor. 7. [1]If the envoys are not admitted, they will go forthwith to Carthage. 8. They do not bathe in the river, because they are afraid[s] of the water.

136. 1. Homer represents Polyphemus as talking with the ram. 2. In the reign of Numa a shield, short and round, fell from heaven. 3. The dictator and his master of horse[2] came back to the city in triumph. 4. An historical fact is an occurrence[3] which is remote from the memory of our own time. 5. The commander used to go in advance with his head uncovered. 6. Xerxes, having taken Thermopylæ, immediately set out for Athens. 7. After peace was made everywhere[4] the temple of Janus was shut. 8. Since[5] the founding of the city this had happened[s] once, while Numa was king. 9. Having dislodged the garrison, and [6]having got possession of the place, he stationed two legions there. 10. Although

[1] Do not use the abl. abs.; why? [2] I.e. *horsemen.* [3] *A thing done.* [4] *In all places.* [5] Ab. [6] Notice the difference of the two participles; one is deponent.

the fathers opposed, nevertheless the law[8] was passed. 11. But[8] Duilius feared that he should suffer punishment [1]for the loss of the fleet. 12. All who do one thing and pretend another are dishonest. 13. Tyrtæus composed songs and recited them to the army.

LESSON XXVIII

THE PARTICIPLE

137. 1. **Future Active and Future Passive (Gerundive).** A. 498, 500, 1–4 (293, 294); B. 337, 4, 7; G. 283, 438. N.; H. 621, 640.

2. **First or Active Periphrastic Conjugation.** A. 498, *a*, 580, *c* (293, *a*, 330. *f*); B. 115, 337. 4; G. 129, 247; H. 236, 531, 619. 3.

3. **Second or Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** A. 500, *b* (294, *b*); B. 115, 337, 7; G. 129, 251; H. 237, 621. 1, 2.

EXAMPLES

138. 1. **Datūrus nōn sum amplius** — *I am not going to give more.*

2. **Fortem et ā vōbīs cōnservandum virum!** — *a brave man and worthy to be saved by you!*

3. **Attribuit urbem inflammandam Cassiō** — *he assigns to Cassius the burning of the city* (the city to be burned).

4. **Cupiditās bellī gerendī** — *eagerness for carrying on the war* (of the war to be carried on).

5. **Ad bellum gerendum parātus** — *ready to carry on the war.*

[1] *Of the fleet lost.*

6. **Quisquam dubitet quid perfectūrus sit?** — *can any one doubt what he will accomplish?*

7. **Prōmīsit sē ventūrum (esse)** — *he promised to come.*

8. **Caesar pontem faciendum cūrat** — *Cæsar has a bridge built.*

9. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda** — *Cæsar had everything to do at once* (all things were to be done by Cæsar).

10. **Mihi cum hīs vīvendum est** — *I must live with these men* (the duty or necessity of living . . . is to me).

Remarks

139. 1. Notice that the word *gerundive* is sometimes used in two senses: (1) as the simple participle, and (2) as representing a grammatical construction (see the next lesson). For the latter, the expression "gerundive construction" should be used.

2. After verbs signifying *hope*, *promise*, *undertake*, *threaten*, and the like, the English present infinitive is translated by the Latin future infinitive.

3. Gerundives of transitive verbs are used personally with a subject or impersonally without a subject; gerundives of intransitive verbs are necessarily used impersonally; see **138.** 9, 10.

Exercise XXVIII

140. 1. Perses returned, [1]intending to try[s] the chances[2] of war anew. 2. But we must begin[s] at[3] the beginning. 3. I have to speak about traitors and assassins. 4. We must[s] cultivate diligence. 5. Who could doubt what was [4]going to happen[s]? 6. I must write a letter. 7. All must die. 8. He gave that gold to a rich man to keep. 9. Plans[s] were formed [5]for destroying the city. 10. He threatens to destroy the whole[s] city.

[1] Fut. act. part. [2] Sing. [3] *From.* [4] *About to be.* [5] Gen.

141. 1. Whithersoever it pleases you to go, a way must be opened with the sword. 2. He had swords drawn and stones thrown. 3. Verres contracted for the removal of the statue[s] of Diana. 4. Were you going to deliver that province to Cæsar or to retain it against Cæsar? 5. [1]And all these wounds of war, which[2] no one but you can cure, must now be healed [3]by you. 6. Cæsar ordered[4] his lieutenants to have ships built in the winter. 7. Caius Gracchus proposed a law[s] for[5] distributing grain to the common people. 8. The general determined[s] that he must destroy that town. 9. On that day I was going to dine with Pomponius at[6] his wedding. 10. He promises to come quickly with all his troops. 11. This is rather to be desired than hoped for. 12. Overcome by great fear, the Segestans decided[s] that the [7]command of the prætor must be obeyed. 13. I suspected that my book would please you.

LESSON XXIX

GERUND. GERUNDIVE. SUPINE

142. 1. **The Gerund.** A. 502, 504, *b*, 505–507, (295, 298, *c*, 299–301); B. 338; G. 425, 426, 428–433; H. 624–631.

2. **The Gerundive Construction.** A. 503–507 (296–301); B. 339, 1–3; G. 427–433; H. 623–631.

3. **The Supine in -um.** A. 509 (302); B. 340, 1; G. 435; H. 633.

4. **The Supine in ū-.** A. 510 (303); B. 340, 2; G. 436; H. 635, 1, 2, 3.

[1] "And these" = *which*. [2] Dat. [3] See **42. 1.** [4] **Imperō.** [5] **Dē** [6] **In.** [7] See **32. 5.**

EXAMPLES

143. 1. **Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit** — *Cæsar stopped speaking* (made an end of speaking).

2. **Nōn pūgnandō sed tacendō nōs superāre potuērunt** — *they might have conquered us not by fighting, but by keeping still.*

3. **In metendō occupātī** — *engaged in reaping.*

4. **Suspīciō rēgnī** (**rēgnum**) **adpetendī** — *a suspicion of aiming at royal power.*

5. **Pācis petendae** (**pācem petendī**) **causā** — *for the sake of seeking peace.*

6. **Ad bellum gerendum parātus** — *ready for carrying on the war.* (As in 138. 5).

7. **Cohortātus Haeduōs de supportandō commeātū** — *having urged the Hæduans about bringing up supplies.*

8. **Veniunt pācem petītum** — *they come to seek peace.*

9. **Hōc est optimum factū** — *this is the best thing to do.*

Remarks

144. 1. Do not use the gerund, with a direct object, after a preposition; use the gerundive construction instead. See **143.** 6, 7, and **146.** 1, 2, 4.

2. After words of *fitness* and the like, **ad** with the accusative is commoner than the dative; see **143.** 6.

3. An object after the supine in **-um** is not common; use instead, to express the purpose, the gerundive construction or a subordinate clause.

Exercise XXIX

Note. — In such cases as admit either the gerund or the gerundive construction, write both.

145. 1. He came into the senate for the sake[s] of dissembling. 2. Nothing seemed to Xenophon so royal as

the pursuit of tilling the soil. 3. They devote themselves to playing. 4. This food is the easiest to digest. 5. This virtue is called foresight, from foreseeing. 6. They came to our camp to seek[4] peace. 7. It is incredible to relate! 8. Plans for burning up the grain were formed. 9. There was the greatest danger of losing the whole fleet. 10. The way of avenging a wrong is easier than that of repaying favors.

146. 1. Nor was he less prompt [1]in action than in invention. 2. Cato was wont to say[2] that Cæsar alone of[2] all[3] came to the overthrow of the republic sober. 3. Pompey, although[3] wounded, [4]swam across the river Rhone. 4. To take these by surprise, Afranius sets out by[5] night with his cavalry. 5. What else did Caius Pansa aim at by holding levies and procuring funds, except that Decimus Brutus should be freed? 6. For men in no respect[6] approach nearer the gods than by granting deliverance to men. 7. Let us now go forthwith to the Capitol to pray to Jupiter Optimus Maximus. 8. Fabius was sent to Delphi to the oracle, to inquire by what prayers they might propitiate the gods. 9. Themistocles withdrew to Argos to live[4]. 10. He had a stream, which was difficult to cross, for[7] a defence. 11. Cæsar gained glory by giving, by relieving, by pardoning; Cato, by bestowing nothing. 12. Riches are sought not only for[8] the necessary uses of life, but also for[8] enjoying its pleasures. 13. Those who had been participants [9]in plundering that inheritance had that statue built.

[1] *In* (in) *doing things than in planning* [them]. [2] **Ex.** [3] Omit. [4] *Crossed by swimming.* [5] **Dē.** [6] **Rēs.** [7] **Prō.** [8] **Ad.** [9] Use the gen. of the gerundive construction.

LESSON XXX

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

147. 1. **Definition.** A. 578 (335); B. 313; G. 508, 2; H. 641.

2. **Declarative Sentences.** A. 579, 580, 581 (336. 1, 2, *a*, 1); B. 314. 1, 331. i; G. 650; H. 642. See also **98.** 6.

3. **Interrogative Sentences.** A. 586 (338); B. 315, 1–3; G. 651; H. 642, 2, 3.

4. **Imperative Sentences.** A. 588, *a* (339); B. 316, *a*; G. 652; H. 642, 4.

5. **Subordinate Clauses.** A. 580 (336, 2); B. 314, 1; G. 650; H. 643.

6. **Tenses of the Infinitive.** A. 584 (336. A); B. 317; G. 653; H. 644. See also 127, 6.

7. **Tenses of the Subjunctive.** A. 585 (336. B); B. 318; G. 654; H. 644. See also **92.** 5.

EXAMPLES

148. 1. Examples of Declarative Sentences in Indirect Discourse may be found in **128.** 4, 5, **130.** 7, **131.** 8, 10, 11, and elsewhere frequently.

2. **Respondit: num memoriam dēpōnere posse,** — *he replied, Could he banish the recollection?* Direct: **num . . . possum?**

3. **Respondit: quid sibi vellet? cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret?** — *he replied, What did he want? why did he come into his possessions?* Direct; **quid vīs? cūr . . . venīs?**

4. **[Dīxit] nē Haeduōs lacesseret,** — [he said] *let him not harass the Hæduans.* Direct: **nē Haeduōs lacessat.**

5. [**Dīxit**] **reminīscerētur veteris incommodī**, — [he said] *let him remember the old disaster.* Direct: **reminīscere.**

6. **Reperiēbat Belgās Gallōs quī ea loca incolerent expulisse**, *he found out that the Belgians had expelled the Gauls who inhabited those regions.* Direct: **Belgae Gallōs quī . . . incolēbant expulērunt.**

Remarks

149. 1. In deciding what tense of the infinitive or subjunctive to use in indirect discourse, consider what the tense would be in the direct discourse.

2. The subject of the infinitive in indirect discourse is regularly expressed in Latin.

3. With **scrībō** the accusative with **ad** is commonly used, less frequently the dative; cf. **150.** 1 (**ad**) and **151.** 3 (dat.).

Exercise XXX

150. 1. You write to me that you are going to sell the country-seat. 2. I hear that in Britain there is [1]no gold nor silver at all. 3. I am exceedingly glad that you bought the farm. 4. Do not think, Pompey[2], that this is the army[3] which subdued Gaul and Germany. 5. To this Quintus Marcius replied: Let them [3]lay down their arms and proceed as suppliants to Rome. 6. I confess[3] that I have not arrived at that degree of wisdom.

151. 1. [4]To what [said he] do all these things tend but to his own ruin[3]? 2. For the Roman people know[3] that there are three ex-consuls who cannot safely come into the senate. 3. He writes to Labienus to come with his

[1] *Nothing of gold*, etc. [2] Consult the grammar for this vocative. [3] *Depart from arms.* [4] **Quōnam.**

legion to the frontiers of the Nervii. 4. He thought it unseemly for him to be excelled in valor by those whom he surpassed[s] in rank. 5. I confess[s] that I zealously followed [1]the course from which true glory could arise. 6. I thought[s] that I ought to lead the army[s] through that district which borders[2] on Cilicia. 7. [3]And when Zeuxis saw[s] this, he thought[s] it was a real curtain by which the painting was concealed. 8. He knew[s] that the grain which they had in the ship was already giving out. 9. I know[3] that you think[s] there is nothing expedient except what is right and honest. 10. Cæsar showed them that he had aimed at no extraordinary honor, but[s] had been content with what[4] was open to all the citizens. 11. For I have never thought[s] that an honorable death[s] ought to be shunned.

LESSON XXXI

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. ATTRACTION

152. 1. **Conditional Sentences in Indirect Discourse.** A. 589, *a*, *b* (337, *a*, *b*); B. 319–321; G. 656–659; H. 646–648.

2. **Informal (Implied) Indirect Discourse.** A. 592, 1–3 (341, *a*, *d*); B. 323; G. 508, 3, 662, 663, 2; H. 649, i.

3. **Subjunctive by Attraction (Integral Part).** A. 593 (342); B. 324; G. 508, 4, 663, 1; H. 652.

EXAMPLES

153. 1. **Dīxit, sī hōc faceret, bene esse** — *he said that, if he did this, it was well.* Direct: **sī hōc facis, bene est.**

[1] **Ea.** [2] Follow the rule for sequence, though the English uses the present. [3] **Begin with quod cum.** [4] **Eō quod.**

2. **Dīxit, sī hōc faceret (fēcisset), bene futūrum esse** — *he said that, if he should do this, it would be well.* Direct, **sī hōc faciēs (fēceris), bene erit.**

3. **Dīxit, sī hōc faceret, bene futūrum esse** — *he said that, if he should do this, it would be well.* Direct: **sī hōc faciās, bene sit.**

4. **Dīxit, sī hōc faceret, bene futūrum esse** — *he said that, if he were doing this, it would be well.* Direct: **sī hōc facerēs, bene esset.**

5. **Dīxit, sī hōc fēcisset, bene futūrum fuisset** — *he said that, if he had done this, it would have been well.* Direct: **sī hōc fēcissēs, bene fuisset.**

6. **Dīxit sī hōc faceret, fore ut pūnīrētur** — *he said that, if he did this, he would be punished.* Direct: **sī hōc faciēs (faciās), pūniēris (pūniāris).**

7. **Paetus omnīs librōs quōs pater suus relīquisset mihi dōnāvit** — *Pætus gave me all the books which* (he said) *his father had left.* [Informal Ind. Disc.]

8. **Mōs est Athēnīs laudārī in cōntiōne eōs quī sint in proeliīs interfectī** — *it is the custom at Athens for those to be publicly eulogized who have been slain in battle.* [Attraction.]

Remarks

154. 1. Dependent clauses which do not form an integral part of the narration may be put in the indicative.

2. **Suī** may refer to the subject of the clause in which it stands or to the subject of the main verb. In order to avoid ambiguity, **ipse** is sometimes used to refer to the subject of the main verb (*indirect reflexive*). In the nominative, of course, **ipse** alone can be used; see **156.** 5.

3. Remember that the fut. perf. of the direct becomes the pluperf. subjv. of the indirect after a secondary tense; see **156.** 1.

Exercise XXXI

155. 1. Be assured that, if you believe this, you are mistaken. 2. I said that, if you believed this, you were mistaken. 3. He said that, if you should believe this, you would be mistaken. 4. Remember that, if you should do this, you would be praised. 5. He said that, if you should do this, you would be praised. 6. I said that, if you had done this, I should have praised you. 7. A copy of your letter which you had sent to the consul was brought to me. 8. You had reached[1] that point where you would have had to perish if you had not conquered[s].

156. 1. He knew[s] that it would [2]do him no good if he should kill[s] the giant. 2. Say that I shall not be angry with him if he does not come to my election. 3. Pompey proposed a bill concerning the murder which had been committed. 4. But I do not grant this, [3]that you should blame in others the same conduct[4] which[5] you boast of in yourselves. 5. The angry king asked[s] the augur whether[6] what he himself should conceive in his mind could be done. 6. But most men think[s] that, if Sulla had been willing to [7]make a more vigorous pursuit, he might[8] have finished the war on that day. 7. We see many who [9]gain their ends without [10]imitating anybody. 8. There is a custom[s] at Syracuse that if [11]there is a discussion on any matter before the senate, any one who wishes may express his opinion. 9. We know not what Philip would have done if he had lived.

[1] **Veniō in.** [2] *Avail him nothing.* [3] See **107.** 3. [4] **Rēs.** [5] Abl. [6] **-Ne.** [7] *Pursue more vigorously.* [8] **Possum.** [9] *Obtain what they wish.* [10] Use noun with gen. [11] Pass. of **referō.**

VOCABULARY TO GRAMMATICAL REVIEW

A

a (an), aliquis; *usually not translated.*
abandon, dēsistō, 3, -stitī, -stitūrus, *w. abl.*
able, be, possum, posse, potuī.
about, *adv.*, circiter; ferē; *prep.*, dē.
absent, *adj.*, absēns, -entis.
absent, be, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
abundance, cōpia, -ae, F.
accomplish, efficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; perficiō; prōficiō.
according to, *abl.*; ad.
account, ratiō, -ōnis.
accuse, accūsō, 1.
acquainted with, be, nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus.
act, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; sē gerere.
action, āctiō, -ōnis, F.
adapt, adcommodō, 1.
added, be, accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus.
address, appellō, 1; hortor, 1; cohortor, 1.
adequate, pār, paris.
admit, admittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
advance, prōgredior, 3, -gressus.
advantage, *be of adv.*, intersum, -esse, -fuī.
adversity, adversae rēs, -ārum rērum, F.
advice, cōnsilium, -ī, N.; sententia, -ae, F.
affability, facilitās, -ātis, F.
affair, rēs, reī, F.
affect, moveō, 2, mōvī, mōtus.
afraid, be, vereor, 2; metuō, 3, -uī, ——.
Afranius, Afranius, -ī, M.
Africa, Āfrica, -ae, F.
Africanus, Āfricānus, -ī, M.
after, *prep.* and *adv.*, post; *conj.*, postquam.
afterwards, post; posteā.
against, adversus; contrā.
age, aetās, -ātis, F.
Agesilaus, Agēsilāus, -ī, M.
agree, adsentior, 4, -sēnsus.
aid, *n.*, adiūmentum, -ī, N.; [ops], opis, F.
aid, *v.*, iuvō, 1, iūvī, iūtus; adiuvō; succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursūrus.
aim at, agō, 3, ēgī, āctus; adpetō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
Alcibiades, Alcibiadēs, -is, M.
Alesia, Alesia, -ae, F.

Alexander, Alexander, -drī, M.
Alexandria, Alexandrīa, -ae, F.
all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um; (other) cēterī, -ae, -a.
allow, *concess. subjv.*
ally, socius, -ī, M.
almost, prope; paene.
alone, ūnus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um.
Alps, Alpēs, -ium, F.
already, iam.
also, quoque; et.
although, cum; quamquam; etsī; *implied in participle.*
always, semper.
ambitious, potentiae cupidus, -a, -um.
among, in; inter.
ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, M.
ancient, prīscus, -a, -um.
and, atque (ac); et; -que; *and so*, itaque.
anew, dē integrō.
anger, īra, -ae, F.
angry, īrātus, -a, -um; *be angry*, īrāscor, 3, īrātus.
another, alius, -a, -ud; alter, -era, -erum.
answer, respondeō, 3, -dī, -spōnsūrus.
Antiochus, Antiochus, -ī, M.
Antonius, Antōnius, -ī, M.
Antony, Antōnius, -ī, M.
anxious, sollicitus, -a, -um.
any, any one, ūllus, -a, -um; quis, qua, quid; quisquam, ——, quic (quid-)quam; (**whatever**) quīvīs, quaevīs, quid- (quod-) vīs; *interrog.* ecquis, ——, ecquid.
Apollo, Apollō, -inis, M.
apparition, forma, -ae, F.
appear, exstō, -stāre, ——, ——; (= *seem*), videor, 2, vīsus.
appease, plācō, 1.
Appius, Appius, -ī, M.
appoint, dicō, 3, dīxī, dictus.
approach, *n.*, adventus, -ūs, M.
approach, *v.*, accēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus.
Archytas, Archȳtās, -ae, M.
Argos, Argī, -ōrum, M.
argue, argumentor, 1.
Ariovistus, Ariovistus, ī, M.
arise, nāscor, 3, nātus.
arm, armō, 1.
arms, arma, -ōrum, N.
army, exercitus, -ūs, M.; agmen, -inis, N.
Arpinum, Arpīnum, -ī, N.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, M.
arrive, perveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum.
art of war, rēs, (reī) mīlitāris (-īs).
as, ut; (*rel.*), quī, quae, quod; *sometimes omitted in trans.*; *as if, just as if*, quasi; *correl. to tam*, quam; *correl. to tantus*, quantus.
ashamed, be, pudet, 2, -uit (-itum).
Asia, Asia, -ae, F.
ask, rogō, 1; interrogō, 1; (**for**) postulō, 1.
assassin, sīcārius, ī, M.
assess, aestimō, 1.
assured, be, scītō, scītōte.
at, ab; ad; in; apud; *locative*; *ablative.*
Athenian, Athēniēnsis, -is, M.
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, F.
attack, *n.*, impetus, -ūs, M.

attack, *v.*, adorior, 4, -ortus.
Atticus, Atticus, -ī, M.
Atuatuca, Atuatuca, -ae, F.
audacious, audāx, -ācis.
audacity, audācia, -ae, F.
augur, augur, -uris, M.
August, sextīlis, -e (*adj.*).
Augustus, Augustus, -ī, M.
authority, auctōritās, -ātis, F.
avail, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.
avenge, ulcīscor, 3, ultus.
avenger, ultor, -ōris, M.
avert, āvertō, 3, -tī, -sus.
avow, profiteor, 2, -fessus.
aware, be, intellegō, 3, -ēxī, -ēctus.

B

bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, N.
banish, ēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, M.
bark, cortex, -icis, C.
base passion, turpitūdō, -inis, F.
bathe, lavō, 3 (1), lāvī, lautus (lōtus).
battle, pūgna, -ae, F.; proelium, -ī, N.
battle line, aciēs, -ēī, F.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus; (**from, off**) absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
beast, bēstia, -ae, F.
because, quod; quia; *implied in participle.*
become, fīō, fierī, factus.
bedchamber, cubiculum, -ī, N.
befall, accidō, 3, -cidī, ——.
before, *prep.* and *adv.*, ad; ante; *conj.*, antequam; priusquam.
beg, petō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
begin, incipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus; ōrdior, 4, ōrsus.
beginning, initium, -ī, N.
behalf of, in, prō.
behind, pōne.
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, M.
believe, crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
belong to, *genitive.*
bench, subsellium, -ī, N.
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus.
besiege, oppūgnō, 1; expūgnō, 1.
bestow, largior, 4.
betake one's self, sē cōnferre.
between, inter.
bill, rōgātiō, -ōnis, F.
bind, vinciō, 4, vīnxī, vīnctus.
Bituriges, Biturīgēs, -um, M.
blame, culpō, 1; reprehendō, 3, -hendī, -hēnsus.
blameless, innocēns, -entis.
blessing, commodum, -ī, N.
blind, caecus, -a, -um.
blood, sanguis, -inis, M.
blue, caeruleus, -a, -um.
boast, glōrior, 1.
bodily, *gen. of* corpus, -oris, N.
body, corpus, -oris, N.
boldness, audācia, -ae, F.
book, liber, -brī, M.
booty, praeda, -ae, F.
border on, attingō, 3, -tigī, -tāctus.
born, be, nāscor, 3, nātus.
Boston, Bostōnia, -ae, F.
both, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
boundless, īnfīnītus, -a, -um.
boy, puer, -ī, M.
brave, fortis, -e.

break; **break down**, īnfringō, 3, -frēgī, -frāctus; interscindō, 3, -scidī, -scissus.
breath, spīritus, -ūs, M.
bridge, pōns, pontis, M.
bring, abdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus; adferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; redigō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus; (**over**) trādūcō; (**upon**) īnferō.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, F.
Briton, Britannus, -ī, M.
brother, frāter, -tris, M.
Brundisium, Brundisium, -ī, N.
Brutus, Brūtus, -ī, M.
Bucephale, Būcephalē, -ēs, F.
build, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; aedificō, 1; (up) exstruō, 3, -ūxī, -ūctus.
building, aedificium, -ī, N.
burial, sepultūra, -ae, F.
burn, ārdeō, 2, -sī, -sus; (up) combūrō, 3, -ussī, -ustus.
bury, sepeliō, 4, īvī, -pultus.
business, negōtium, -ī, N.
but, at; sed; autem; quīn; (= *except*) nisi; praeter; *but if*, quod sī.
buy, emō, 3, ēmī, ēmptus.
by, ā (ab); *ablative; dative.*

C

Cæsar, Caesar, -aris, M.
Caius, Gāius (C.).
calamity, calamitās, -ātis, F.
call, appellō, 1.
camp, castra, -ōrum, N.
can, possum, posse, potuī; queō, quīre, quīvī, quitus.
Caninius, Canīnius, -ī, M.
Cannæ, **at**, Cannēnsis, -e, (*adj.*).
Canusium, Canusium, -ī, N.
capital, caput, -itis, N.
Capitol, Capitōlium, -ī, N.
care, cūra, -ae, F.
carefully, dīligenter.
careless, neglegēns, -entis.
carry, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; (**away**) auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātus.
Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, F.
Carthaginian, Carthāginiēnsis, -is, M.; Poenus, -ī, M.
case, causa, -ae, F.; rēs, reī, F.
catch sight of, cōnspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus.
Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, M.
Cato, Catō, -ōnis, M.
cattle, pecus, -oris, N.
cause, causa, -ae, F.
cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M.
cavern, spēlunca, -ae, F.
cease, dēsinō, 3, -siī, -situs.
celebrate, celebrō, 1.
censure, reprehendō, 3, -dī, -hēnsus.
Ceres, Cerēs, -eris, F.
cērtain, **a**, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam).
certainly, certē; profectō.
chair, sella, -ae, F.
chance, cāsus, -ūs, M.
change, mūtō, 1.
character, ingenium, -ī, N.
characteristic, proprius, -a, -um.
charge, īnsimulō, 1.
charioteer, essedārius, -ī, M.
Chersonesus, Chersonēsus, -ī, F.
chief, prīnceps, -ipis, M.
children, līberī, -ōrum, M.; puerī, -ōrum, M.
choose, creō, 1.
Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, M.

Cilicia, Cilicia, -ae, F.
Cincinnatus, Cincinnātus, -ī, M.
circumstance, rēs, reī, F.
citizen, cīvis, -is, C.
city, urbs, -is, F.
civil, cīvīlis, -e.
Claudius, Claudius, -ī, M.
Cleomenes, Cleomenēs, -is, M.
Clodius, Clōdius, -ī, M.
clothe, vestiō, 4.
cloth-factory, textrīnum, -ī, N.
Cluentius, Cluentius, -ī, M.
Cnæus, Gnaeus (C.).
cohort, cohors, -rtis, F.
cold, be, frīgeō, 2, ——, ——.
Collatinus, Collātīnus, -ī, M.
colleague, conlēga, -ae, M.
come, veniō, 4, vēnī, ventum; (forward) prōcēdo, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus; accēdō; (up) succēdō; (back) redeō, -īre, -iī, -itus; (to pass) fīō, fierī, factus.
command, imperium, -ī, N.
commander, imperātor, -ōris, M.
commit, committō, 3, -mīsī, -missus; faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.
Commius, Commius, -ī, M.
common, commūnis, -e.
common people, plēbs, -is, F.
company, comitātus, -ūs, M.
compare, comparō, 1.
compel, cōgō, 3, coēgī, coāctus.
complain of, queror, querī, questus.
complete, cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
compose, compōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus.
conceal, cēlō, 1; occultō, 1.
conceive, concipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus.
concerning, dē.
concerns, it, interest, -esse, -fuit; rēfert, -ferre, -tulit.
condemn, damnō, 1; condemnō, 1.
condition, lēx, lēgis, F.; condiciō, -ōnis, F.
conference, conloquium, -ī, N.
confess, fateor, 2, fassus.
confident, be, confīdō, 3, -fīsus.
conquer, vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.
conscript, cōnscrīptus, -a, -um.
consider, cōnsīderō, 1; exīstimō, 1.
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, F.
consul, cōnsul, -is, M.
content, contentus, -a, -um.
contest, contentiō, -ōnis, F.
contract for, locō, 1.
contrary to, contrā.
control, *n.*, potestās, -ātis, F.
copy, exemplum, -ī, N.
Corinth, Corinthus, -ī, F.
Coriolanus, Coriolānus, -ī, M.
corrupt, corrumpō, 3, -rūpī, -ruptus.
council, concilium, -ī, N.
count, numerō, 1; putō, 1.
country, patria, -ae, F.; rūs, rūris, N.
country-seat, villa, -ae, F.; vīcus, -ī, M.
courage, animus, -ī, M.
course, cursus, -ūs, M.
Crassus, Crassus, -ī, M.
crime, facinus, -oris, N.; scelus -eris, N.
cross, trānseō, 4; -iī, -itus; trāiciō, 3, -iēcī, iectus.
crowd, turba, -ae, F.
crush, opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus; comprimō.
cultivate, colō, 3, -uī, cultus.
Cupid, Cupīdō, -inis, M.

cupidity, cupiditās, -ātis, F.
cure, medeor, 2, ——.
Cures, Curēs, -ium, C.
curse, pestis, -is, F.
curtain, linteum, -ī, N.
custom, īnstitūtum, -ī, N.; mōs, mōris, M.
cut off, interclūdō, 3, -sī, -sus.
Cyrus, Cȳrus, -ī, M.

D

damages, līs, lītis, F.
danger, perīculum, -ī, N.
dare, audeō, 2, ausus.
day, diēs, -ēī, M. and F.; *the day before*, prīdiē; *two days*, biduum, -ī, N.; *every day*, cotīdiē.
daybreak, prīma lūx, prīmae lūcis, F.
deadly, capitālis, -e.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, F.
deceive, fallō, 3, fefellī, falsus.
December, December, -bris, -bre (*adj.*).
decide (upon), cōnstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus; dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētus; iūdicō, 1.
Decimus, Decimus, -ī, M.
declare, indīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictus.
deed, rēs, reī, F.
deem, exīstimō, 1.
defeat, *n.*, cladēs, -is, F.
defeat, *v.*, pellō, 3, pepulī, pulsus; superō, 1.
defence, praesidium, -ī, N.; dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, F.; mūnimentum, -ī, N.
defend, dēfendō, 3, -dī, -fēnsus; tueor, 2, tuitus.
defendant, iste, istīus.
degree, gradus, -ūs, M.
delay, mora, -ae, F.
deliberation, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
deliver, trādō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
deliverance, salūs, -ūtis, F.
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrum, M.
demand, efflāgitō, 1; poscō, 3, poposcī, ——; postulō, 1; (**back**) reposcō, 3, ——, ——.
Demosthenes, Dēmosthenēs, -is, M.
deny, negō, 1.
depart, discēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus.
departure, discessus, -ūs, M.
depend upon, cōnsistō, 3, -stitī, ——.
deploy, explicō, -āre, -āvī and -uī, -ātus or -itus.
deprive, -exuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
depth, altitūdō, -inis, F.
desert, dēserō, 3, -uī, -tus.
deserving, dīgnus, -a, -um.
design, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
desire, *n.*, cupiditās, -ātis, F.
desire, *v.*, cupiō, 3, -īvī, -ītus; optō, 1.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
despise, contemnō, 3, -tempsī, -temptus.
destitute, vacuus, -a, -um.
destroy, dēleō, 2, -ēvī, -ētus.
determination, vīs animī.
determine, cōnstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
devoid, expers, -pertis.
devote, dō, dare, dedī, datus.
devotion, pietās, -ātis, F.
Diana, Diāna, -ae, F.
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, M.
die, morior, 3 (4), mortuus.
differ, dissentiō, 4, -sēnsī, -sēnsus.

difference, *it makes a difference*, interest, -esse, -fuit.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
difficulty, **with**, aegrē.
digest, concoquō, 3, -coxī, -coctus.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, F.
dine, cēnō, 1.
dinner, cēna, -ae, M.
Dionysius, Dionȳsius, -ī, M.
direct, praecipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus.
discern, cernō, 3, crēvī, crētus.
discord, discordia, -ae, F.
discourse, *n.*, sermō, -ōnis, M.; ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
discourse, *v.*, disserō, 3, -uī, -tus.
discover, comperiō, 4, -ī, -tus; inveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventus.
discuss, agō, 3, ēgī, āctus.
disembark, ex nāvī ēgredior, 3, -gressus.
disgrace, dēdecus, -oris, N.
disgusted, **be**, taedet, 2, ——, ——.
dishonest, perfidus, -a, -um.
dislodge, dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus.
disregard, postpōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus.
dissemble, dissimulō, 1.
distant, **be**, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
distinguished, clārus, -a, -um.
distress, **be in**, labōrō, 1.
distribute, dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus; distribuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
district, regiō, -ōnis, F.
ditch, fossa, -ae, F.
divide, dīvidō, 3, -vīsī, -vīsus.
do, agō, 3, ēgī, āctus; faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; committō, 3, -mīsī, -missus; cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; (**good**) prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī; (**harm**) obsum, -esse, -fuī; (**wrong**) errō, 1; peccō, 1; *do not*, nōlī, nōlīte; *sometimes not expressed.*
Dolabella, Dolābella, -ae, M.
doubt, dubitō, 1.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
draw, dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus; (**up**) cōnstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus; (**near**) adpropinquō, 1; (**a sword**) dēstringō, 3, -strīnxī, -strictus.
dream, *n.*, somnium, -ī, N.
dream, *v.*, somniō, 1.
Duilius, Duīlius, -ī, M.
dwell, habitō, 1.
Dyrrachium, Dyrrachium, -ī, N.

E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque).
each other, *reflex. pron.; with each other*, inter sē.
eager, alacer, -cris, -cre; cupiēns, -entis; studiōsus, -a, -um.
early, mātūrus, -a, -um.
earth, terra, -ae, F.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, -e.
edict, edictum, -ī, N.
eight, octō.
eightieth, octōgēsimus, -a, -um.
eighty, octōgintā.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut; vel . . . vel.
elder, senior, -ōris; māior (-ōris) nātū.
elect, creō, 1.
election, comitia, -ōrum, N.
eloquence, ēloquentia, -ae, F.
else (= *other*), alius, -a, -ud.
emboss, caelō, 1.

emperor, imperātor, -ōris, M.
encircle, cingō, 3, -cīnxī, cīnctus.
encompass, stīpō, 1.
encounter, succurrō, 3, -currī, -cursūrus; subeō, -īre, -iī, itūrus.
encourage, hortor, 1; cohortor, 1.
end of, extrēmus, -a, -um.
endeavor, labōrō, 1.
endure, sustineō, 2, -uī, -tentus.
enemy, hostis, -is, C.; inimīcus, -ī, M.
enjoy, fruor, 3, frūctus; perfruor.
enmity, inimīcitia, -ae, F.
enormous, maximus, -a, -um.
enough, satis.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, M.
envy, *n.*, invidia, -ae, F.
envy, *v.*, invideō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus.
Epaminondas, Epamīnōndās, -ae, M.
Epicurus, Epicūrus, -ī, M.
equestrian, equester, -tris, -tre.
err, errō, 1.
error, error, -ōris, M.
escape, effugiō, 3, -fūgī, ——.
especially, potissimum.
establish, cōnfīrmō, 1.
estrange, abaliēnō, 1.
even, etiam; vel; ipse, -a, -um; ūsque; *not even*, nē . . . quidem.
ever, umquam.
every, omnis, -e; *everybody*, *every one*, quisque, quaeque; *everything*, omnia, -ium.
evident, it is, cōnstat, 1, -stitit.
examine, īnspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus.
exceed, excēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus.
exceedingly, vehementer.
excel, praestō, 1, -stitī, -stitus; superō, 1.
except, nisi; praeter.
exchange, inter sē dare.
ex-consul, cōnsulāris, -is, M.
exercise, exercitātiō, -ōnis, F.
exhort, hortor, 1.
expectation, exspectātiō, -ōnis, F.
expedient, ūtilis, -e.
expose, offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātus.
express, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus.
extend, pateō, 2, -uī, ——.
extraordinary, extraōrdinārius, -a, -um; singulāris, -e.
eye, oculus, -ī, M.

F

Fabius, Fabius, -ī, M.
fact, rēs, reī, F.
fail, dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
fairness, aequitās, -ātis, F.
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
fall, cadō, 3, cecidī, casūrus; concidō, 3, -cidī, ——; lābor, 3, lāpsus; procumbō, 3, -cubuī, ——; (in with) incidō, 3, -cidī, ——; (out) excidō.
falsehood, mendācium, -ī, N.
falter, adhaerēscō, 3, ——, ——.
fame, fāma, -ae, F.; glōria, -ae, F.
famous, clārus, -a, -um; *the famous*, ille, -a, -ud.
far, *adv.*, longē; *as* (*so*) *far as*, quod.
farm, praedium, -ī, N.
fasten, fīgō, 3, fīxī, fīxum.
father, pater, -tris, M.
father's, paternus, -a, -um.
fatherland, patria, -ae, F.
fault, vitium, -ī, N.

favor, *n.*, beneficium, -ī, N.
favor, *v.*, faveō, 2, fāvī, fautūrus.
fear, *n.*, metus, -ūs, M.; timor, -ōris, M.
fear, *v.*, vereor, 2; timeō, 2, timuī, ——; metuō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
feel, sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus.
fellow-citizens, cīvēs, -ium, C.
feud, inimīcitia, -ae, F.
few, paucī, -ae, -a; *very few*, perpaucī.
fidelity, fidēs, -eī, F.
field, ager, -grī, M.; campus, -ī, M.; *in the field*, mīlitiae.
fifteen, quīndecim.
fifth, quīntus, -a, -um.
fifty, quīnquāgintā.
fight, *n.*, certāmen, -inis, N.
fight, *v.*, pūgnō, 1; dīmicō, 1.
fighting, *n.*, pūgna, -ae, F.
find, inveniō, 4, -vēnī, -ventum; reperiō, 4, repperī, repertus; (**guilty**) condemnō, 1.
finish, cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; fīniō, 4; perficiō.
fire, *n.*, īgnis, -is, M.
fire, *v.*, *set fire to*, *set on fire*, incendō, 3, -dī, -cēnsus.
first, prīmus, -a, -um; (**of the month**) Kalendae, -ārum, F.; *in the first place*, *first*, *adv.*, prīmum.
five, quīnque.
flank, latus, -eris, N.
flatterer, adūlātor, -ōris, M.
flee, fugiō, 3, fūgī, ——; (**for refuge**) perfugiō.
fleet, classis, -is, F.
flow, fluō, 3, flūxī, fluxus.
flowing (hair), prōmissus, -a, -um.
follow, sequor, 3, -cūtus; īnsequor.
folly, stultitia, -ae, F.
food, cibus, -ī, M.
fool, īnsipiēns, -entis, M.
foolishness, stultitia, -ae, F.
foot, pēs, pedis, M.
for, *conj.*, nam; enim (*postpositive*); etenim; *prep.* dē; in; per; prō; *dative*; *genitive*.
force, vigor, -ōris, M.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, F.
foresee, prōvideō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus.
foresight, prūdentia, -ae, F.
forest, silva, -ae, F.
forget, oblīvīscor, 3, oblītus.
forgetful, oblītus, -a, -um.
form, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; ineō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
former, superior, -us; prīstinus, -a, -um; *the former*, ille, -a, -ud.
forthwith, prōtinus.
fortify, mūniō, 4.
fortress, castellum, ī, N.
fortunate, fōrtunātus, -a, -um.
fortune, fōrtūna, -ae, F.
found, condō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
fountain, fōns, fontis, M.
four, quattuor.
fourteenth, quārtus decimus, -a, -um.
frame, *n.*, corpus, -oris, N.
frame, *v.*, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.
fraud, fraus, fraudis, F.
free, *adj.*, līber, -era, -erum; expers, -ertis; *be free from*, absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus.
free, *v.*, līberō, 1.
freely, līberē.
free town, mūnicipium, -ī, N.

friend, amīcus, -ī, M.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, F.
frighten, terreō, 2.
from, ā (ab); dē; ē (ex); *dative; ablative*, quōminus *w. subjv.*; *from which*, unde.
front, *in front* (*of*), adversus, -a, -um.
frontiers, fīnēs, -ium, M.
full, plēnus, -um.
funds, pecūnia, -ae, F.
further, longius.

G

Gades, Gādēs, -ium, F.
gain, adipīscor, 3, -eptus.
game, lūdus, -ī, M.
garden, hortus, -ī, M.
garrison, praesidium, -ī, N.
gate, porta, -ae, F.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, F.
Gauls, Gallī, -ōrum, M.
general, imperātor, -ōris, M.; dux, ducis, M.; praefectus, -ī, M.
generosity, līberālitās, -ātis, F.
genius, ingenium, -ī, N.
Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, M.
Germany, Germānia, -ae, F.
get, parō, 1; (**possession of**) potior, 4.
giant, gigās, -antis, M.
gift, dōnum, -ī, N.
gilded, inaurātus, -a, -um.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus; (**orders**) iubeō, 2, iussī, iussum; (**out**) dēficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; (**warning**) moneō, 2.
glad, be, gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus.
glory, glōria, -ae, F.
go, eō, īre, īvī, itūrus; (**off, away**) abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus; (**out**) exeō; excēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessus; (**in advance**) anteeō; (**fast**) festīnō, 1; (**on** = *be done*) *pass. of* gerō, 3, gessī, gestus; (**beyond**) vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.
god, deus, -ī, M.
goddess, dea, -ae, F.
gold, aurum, -ī, N.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
good will, voluntās, -ātis, F.
Gracchus, Gracchus, -ī, M.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, N.
grant, dō, dare, dedī, datus; concēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus; *with concess. subjv.*
grasp, teneō, 2, -uī, -tus.
great, māgnus, -a, -um; *how great*, quantus, -a, -um; *so great*, tantus, -a, -um; *very great, greatest*, summus, -a, -um; maximus, -a, -um.
greatly, valdē.
Greece, Graecia, -ae, F.
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um.
grief, lūctus, -ūs, M.
grieve (**at**), doleō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
ground, humus, -ī, F.
grove, lūcus, -ī, M.
guard, praesidium, -ī, N.
guard **against**, caveō, 2, cāvī, cautus.

H

Hæduans, Haeduī, -ōrum, M.
hair, capillus, -ī, M.
hand, manus, -ūs, F.
Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, M.
happen, fīō, fierī, factus; accidō, 3, -dī, ——.
happily, beātē.
happy, beātus, -a, -um.
harm, noceō, 2, -uī, ——.

haste, festīnātiō, -ōnis, M.; *be in haste*, festīnō, 1.
hasten, properō, 1; contendō, 3, -dī, -tus; (**through**) percurrō, 3, -cucurrī *or* -currī, -cursus.
have, habeō, 2; sum *w. dat.*; (**a thing done**) cūrō, 1, *w. sec. periph. conj.*
have to, *second periph. conj.*
he, is; ille; sē; *often omitted in translation.*
head, caput, -itis, N.; *be at the head of*, praesum, -esse, -fuī.
heal, sānō, 1.
health, valētūdō, -inis, F.
hear, audiō, 4.
heaven, caelum, -ī, N.
height, altitūdō, -inis, F.
help, auxilium, ī, N.
hereafter, posteā.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, M.; mōns, montis, M.
himself, suī; ipse.
his, suus, -a, -um; ēius.
historical fact, historia, -ae, F.
hitherto, adhūc.
hold, habeō, 2.
home, domus, -ūs (-ī), F.
Homer, Homērus, -ī, M.
honest, honestus, -a, -um.
honor, honor, -ōris, M.; fidēs, -eī, F.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
honorably, honestē.
hope, *n.*, spēs, speī, F.
hope, hope for, *v.*, spērō, 1.
Horatius, Horace, Horātius, -ī, M.
horse, equus, -ī, M.
horseman, eques, -itis, M.
hostage, obses, -idis, C.
hostile, inimīcus, -a, -um.
hour, hōra, -ae, F.
house, domus, -ūs (-ī), F.
how, quam; (**long**) quō ūsque; (**much, great**) quantus, -a, -um.
however, *adv.*, quamvīs.
hunger, famēs, -is, F.
hungry, esuriēns, -entis.
husband, marītus, -ī, M.

I

I, ego, meī; (**for my part**) equidem.
Ides, Īdūs, -uum, F.
if, sī; (**not**) nisi; *implied in participle.*
ignorant, imperītus, -a, -um.
Ilerda, Ilerda, -ae, F.
illustrious, clārus, -a, -um.
imitate, imitor, 1.
imitation, imitātiō, -ōnis, F.; similitūdō, -inis, F.
immediately, statim; continuō.
impel, urgeō, 2, ursī, ——.
in, in.
incredible, incrēdibilis, -e.
incur, adpetō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
indebted, be, dēbeō, 2, -uī, -itus.
indeed, vērō (*postpositive*).
India, India, -ae, F.
indispensable, necessārius, -a, -um.
individuals, singulī, -ōrum, M.
infamy, īnfāmia, -ae, F.
inform, certiōrem faciō (3, fēcī, factus).
inhabit, incolō, 3, -uī, -cultus.
inheritance, hērēditās, -ātis, F.
injury, iniūria, -ae, F.

injustice, iniūstitia, -ae, F.; inīquitās, -ātis, F.
innocence, innocentia, -ae, F.
inquire (of), percontor, 1; scītor, 1.
instructions, praecepta, -ōrum, N.
integrity, innocentia, -ae, F.
interest, *it is for one's interest*, interest, -esse, -fuit.
into, in.
introduce, intrōdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus.
intrust, permittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
investigation, quaestiō, -ōnis, F.
invite, invītō, 1.
Ionians, Iōnēs, -um, M.
island, īnsula, -ae, F.
Isocrates, Īsocratēs, -is, M.
it, is, ea, id; ille, -a, -ud; *poss. pron.*, suus, -a, -um; *often omitted in translation.*
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, F.
itself. See **self**.

J

January, Iānuārius, -a, -um (*adj.*).
Janus, Iānus, -ī, M.
jesting, *n.*, iocus, -ī, M.
joke, iocor, 1.
journey, iter, itineris, N.
joy, laetitia, -ae, F.
judge, *n.*, iūdex, -icis, M.
judge, *v.*, iūdicō, 1.
judgment, iūdicium, -ī, N.; sententia, -ae, F.
jump out, exsiliō, 4, -uī (-iī), ——.
June, Iūnius, -a, -um (*adj.*).
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, M.
just, vērus, -a, -um; *just . . . as*, sīc (ita) . . . ut (quasi).
justice, iūstitia, -ae, F.

K

Kalends, Kalendae, -ārum, F.
keep, servō, 1; (**secret**) dissimulō, 1.
kill, occīdō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus; interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
kind, *of this kind*, hūius modī.
king, rēx, rēgis, M.; *be king*, rēgnō, 1.
know, intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus; sciō, 4; sentiō, 4, sēnsī, sēnsus; cōgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitus; (**how**), sciō, 4; (**not**) nesciō, 4; īgnōrō, 1.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, M.
labor, *n.*, labor, -ōris, M.
labor, *v.*, labōrō, 1; (**for**) serviō, 4.
Lacedæmon, Lacedaemōn, -onis, F.
lack, careō, 2, -uī, -itūrus; egeō, 2, -uī, ——; dēsum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus.
lame, claudus, -a, -um.
land, terra, -ae, F.
language, lingua, -ae, F.; ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
Laodicea, Lāodicēa, -ae, F.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, postrēmus, -a, -um; *adv.*, proximē; *last night*, hāc nocte.
Latium, Latium, -ī, N.
latter, hīc, haec, hōc.
law, lēx, lēgis, F.
lay (a plot), faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.
lead, dūcō, 3, dūxī, ductus; dēdūcō; (**out**) ēdūcō; (**over**) trādūcō.
leader, dux, ducis, M.
leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, M.

learn, cōgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nitus; discō, 3, didicī, ——.
least, at, certē; quidem.
leave, relinquō, 3, -līquī, -lictus; discēdō (3, -cessī, -cessūrus) ab.
legion, legiō, -ōnis, F.
Lemnos, Lēmnos, -ī, F.
less, *adv.*, minus.
lest, nē.
let, *sign of hort. subjv.*; (**pass**) intermittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus.
letter, litterae, -ārum, F.; epistula, -ae, F.
levy, *n.*, dēlēctus, -ūs, M.
levy, *v.*, īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus.
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, F.
lictor, līctor, -ōris, M.
lie, mentior, 4.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, M.
life, vīta, -ae, F.; *time of life*, aetās, -ātis, F.
light, lūx, lūcis, F.
like, *adj.*, similis, -e.
like, *v.*, volō, velle, voluī, ——.
likewise, item.
line (of battle), aciēs, -ēī, F.
listen to, audiō, 4.
literature, litterae, -ārum, F.
litter, lectīca, -ae, F.
little, *adj.*, parvus, -a, -um.
little, *adv.*, paulō.
live, vīvō, 3, vīxī, ——; habitō, 1.
Livius, Livius, -ī, M.; *of Livius*, Liviānus, -a, -um.
long, *adj.*, longus, -a, -um.
long, *adv.*, diū; iam prīdem; *as long as*, dum.
longing, dēsīderium, -ī, N.
look out for, prōspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus; consulō, 3, -uī, -sultus.
lose, āmittō, 3, -mīsī, -missus; perdō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
lot, sors, sortis, F.
loud (voice), māgnus, -a, -um.
lovable, amābilis, -e.
love, amō, 1; dīligō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus.
low, humilis, -e.
Lucius, Lucius, -ī, M.
lucky, fēlīx, -īcis.
Lucullus, Lucullus, -ī, M.
Lutetia, Lutetia, -ae, F.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, M.
magnificence, māgnificentia, -ae, F.
Maia, Māia, -ae, F.
maintain, sustentō, 1.
make, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus; (**mistake**) peccō, 1; (**up**) expleō, 2, plēvī, -plētus.
man, homō, -inis, C.; vir, virī, M.
Manlius, Manlius, -ī, N.
manly, virīlis, -e.
manner, genus, -eris, N.; modus, -ī, M.
many, multī, -ae, -a; *a good many*, complūrēs, -a (-ia).
Marathon, Marathōn, -ōnis, F.
Marcellus, Mārcellus, -ī, M.
march, iter, itineris, N.; agmen, -inis, N.
March, Mārtius, -a, -um.
Marcius, Mārcius, -ī, M.
Marcus, Mārcus, -ī, M.
Marius, Marius, -ī, M.
Masinissa, Masinissa, -ae, M.
master, magister, -trī, M.
matter, rēs, reī, F.

may, licet, 2, -uit (-itum); *optative subjv.*
mean, *v.*, volō, velle, voluī, ——.
meanwhile, intereā.
meet, *go to meet*, obviam eō, -īre, -īvī, -itūrus.
memory, memoria, -ae, F.
Mercury, Mercurius, -ī, M.
merry, hilaris, -e.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, M.
Metellus, Metellus, -ī, M.
might, possum, posse, potuī, ——.
mile, mīlle passuum.
Milo, Mīlō, -ōnis, M.
Miltiades, Miltiadēs, -is, M.
mind, animus, -ī, M.; mēns, mentis, F.
mindful, memor, -oris.
Minerva, Minerva, -ae, F.
miss, dēsīderō, 1.
mistaken, be, errō, 1.
Mithridates, Mithri(a)dātēs, -is, M.
moderate, temperāns, -antis; moderātus, -a, -um.
moderation, modus, -ī, M.
money, pecūnia, -ae, F.
month, mēnsis, -is, M.
mood, animus, -ī, M.
more, plūs, plūris; *adv.*, plūs; magis; amplius.
most, *superl.; most, most of*, plērīque, plēraeque, plēraque.
mother, māter, -tris, F.
mound, agger, -eris, M.
much, *adj.*, multus, -a, -um.
much, *adv.*, multō; longē; valdē.
Mummius, Mummius, -ī, M.
murder, *n.*, caedēs, -is, F.
murder, *v.*, interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
Murena, Mūrēna, -ae, M.
music, mūsica, -ae, F.
must, *sec. periph. conj.*
my, meus, -a, -um; *dative.*

N

name, *n.*, nōmen, -inis, N.
name, *v.*, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus.
native land, patria, -ae, F.
nature, nātūra, -ae, F.
naval, nāvālis, -e.
near, ad; prope; *be near*, adsum, -esse, -fuī, ——.
necessary, necessārius, -a, -um.
necessity, necessitās, -ātis, F.
need, opus, N., *indecl.*; indigeō, 2, -uī, ——.
neglect, neglegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus.
neighbor, fīnitimus, -ī, M.; proximus, -ī, M.; vīcīnus, -ī, M.
neither, neque (nec).
Nervii, Nerviī, -ōrum, M.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
Nicæa, Nīcaea, -ae, F.
night, nox, noctis, F.; *by night*, noctū.
nine, novem.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um; (**one**) nēmō [-inis], C.; nūllus.
nobility, nōbilitās, -ātis, F.
noble, nōbilis, -e; pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
none, no one, nūllus, -a, -um.
Nones, Nōnae, -ārum, F.
nor, and not, neque (nec); nēve.
not, nōn; nē; *not even*, nē . . . quidem.
nothing, nihil, N., *indecl.*

notorious, clārus, -a, -um.
now, nunc; iam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, M.
number, numerus, -ī, M.

O

O, *interj.*, Ō; *O that*, utinam.
oath, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, N.
obey, pāreō, 2, -uī, ——.
ob'ject, rēs, reī, F.
object', obtrectō, 1.
observing, *n.*, observātiō, -ōnis, F.
obtain, cōnsequor, 3, -cūtus.
of, ā (ab); dē; ē (ex); *genitive*.
offer, profiteor, 2, -fessus; dō, dare, dedī, datus.
office, magistrātus, -ūs, M.
officer, lēgātus, -ī, M.
often, saepe.
old, vetus, -eris; (**age**) senectūs, -ūtis, F.
older, māior, -ius.
olive, olea, -ae, F.
omen, ōmen, -inis, N.
on, in; dē; ab; *ablative*.
once, semel.
one, ūnus, -a, -um; (of two) alter, -era, -erum; *one . . . the other*, alter . . . alter; *one . . . another*, alius . . . alius.
only, *adj.*, ūnicus, -a, -um; sōlus, -a, -um; *not only . . . but also (even)*, nōn modo (sōlum) . . . sed (verum) etiam; cum . . . tum; *adv.*, omnīnō.
open, aperiō, 4, -uī, -tus; *be open*, pateō, 2, -uī, ——.
opinion, sententia, -ae, F.; opīniō, -ōnis, F.
opportunity, occāsiō, -ōnis, F.; potestās, -ātis, F.; facultās, -ātis, F.
oppose, resistō, 3, -stitī, ——.
opposite, contrārius, -a, -um.
oppress, opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus.
opulent, opulentus, -a, -um.
or, aut; vel; *in double quest.*, an; (**not**) annōn; necne.
oracle, ōrāculum, -ī, N.
oration, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
orator, ōrātor, -ōris, M.
order, *n.*, ōrdō, -inis, M.
order, *v.*, iubeō, 2, iussī, iussus; imperō, 1; *in order to*, ut.
other, alius, -a, -ud; alter, -era, -erum.
ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2, -uit; *sec. periph. conj.*
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
out of, ex.
overcome, cōnficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.
overthrow, dēiciō, 3, -iēcī, -iectus; ēvertō, 3, -tī, -sus.
own, **his**, **their**, suus, -a, -um; **my**, meus, -a, -um; **our**, noster, -tra, -trum.

P

pain, dolor, -ōris, M.
painting, pictūra, -ae, F.
Pansa, Pānsa, -ae, M.
Papirius, Papīrius, -ī, M.
pardon, īgnōscō, 3, -nōvī, -nōtus.
parent, parēns, -entis, C.
part, pars, partis, F.
participant, particeps, -ipis, M.
party, pars, partis, F.
pass (a law), ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; (a night) agō, 3, ēgī, āctus; (**over**) superō, 1.

past, the, praeterita, -ōrum, N.
path, sēmita, -ae, F.
patience, patientia, -ae, F.
peace, pāx, pācis, F.
Peloponnesian, Peloponnēsius, -a, -um.
penalty, poena, -ae, F.
people, populus, -ī, M.
perish, pereō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
permitted, it is, licet, 2, -uit (-itum).
Perses, Persēs, -ae, M.
Persians, Persae, -ārum, M.
persist, persevērō, 1.
persuade, persuādeō, 2, -sī, -sus.
Pherecydes, Pherecȳdes, -is, M.
Philip, Philippus, -ī, M.
philosopher, philosophus, -ī, M.; sapiēns, -entis, M.
Picenian, Pīcēnus, -a, -um.
pile, acervus, -ī, M.
pity, *n.*, misericordia, -ae, F.
pity, *v.*, miseret, 2, -uit (*impers.*).
place, *n.*, locus, -ī, M.
place, *v.*, pōnō, 3, posuī, positus; dēpōnō.
plan, *n.*, cōnsilium, -ī, N.
plan, *v.*, excōgitō, 1.
planet, stella, -ae, F.
plant, serō, 3, sēvī, satus.
Plato, Platō, -ōnis, M.
play, *n.*, fābula, -ae, F.
play, *v.*, lūdō, 3, -sī, -sus.
pleasant, iūcundus, -a, -um.
please, dēlectō, 1; placeō, 2, -uī, -itus; *it pleases* (*impers.*), libet, 2, -uit (-itum).
pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.
pleasure, voluptās, -ātis, F.
plebs, plēbs, plēbis, F.
plot, īnsidiae, -ārum, F.
plough, arātrum, -ī, N.
plunder, expīlō, 1; dīripiō, 3, -uī, -reptus.
poet, poēta, -ae, M.
point, locus, -ī, M.; *at no point*, nusquam.
policy, consilium, -ī, N.
Polyphemus, Polyphēmus, -ī, M.
Pompey, Pompēius, -ī, M.
Pomponius, Pompōnius, -ī, M.
poor, miser, -era, -erum; pauper, -eris.
possessions, rēs, reī, F.; *get possession of*, potior, 4.
post, locus, -ī, M.
posterity, posteritās, -ātis, F.
poverty, egestās, -ātis, F.
power, potentia, -ae, F.; potestās, -ātis, F.; imperium, -ī, N.; vīs, vīs, F.
powerful, potēns, -entis.
praetor, praetor, -ōris, M.
praise, laudō, 1.
praiser, laudātor, -ōris, M.
pray (*exclam.*), nam (*enclitic*).
pray, *v.*, ōrō, 1; precor, 1; (to) supplicō, 1.
prayers, precēs, -um, F.
predecessors, superiōrēs, -um, M.
pre-eminent, excellēns, -entis.
prefer, praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; mālō, mālle, māluī, ——.
prepare, parō, 1.
present, praesēns, -entis; *be present*, adsum, -esse, -fuī, futūrus.
preserve, servō, 1.
pretend, simulō, 1.
prevent, impediō, 4.
previous, superior, -us.

price, pretium, -ī, N.; *genitive*.
pride, superbia, -ae, F.
private, prīvātus, -a, -um.
proceed, proficīscor, 3, -fectus.
proclaim, praedicō, 1; pronūntiō, 1; renūntiō, 1.
procure, parō, 1; comparō, 1.
profane, profānus, -a, -um.
promise, polliceor, 2.
prompt, prōmptus, -a, -um.
proof, argūmentum, -ī, N.
properly, honestē.
propitiate, plācō, 1.
propose, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
prosperity, secundae (-ārum) rēs (rērum).
prosperous, beātus, -a, -um.
protect, tueor, 2, tuitus.
protection, fidēs, -eī, F.; praesidium, -ī, N.
provide, prōvideō, 2, -vīdī, -vīsus.
provided (that), dum (modo); *relative clause*.
province, prōvincia, -ae, F.
public, pūblicus, -a, -um.
Publius, Pūblius, -ī, M.
Punic, Pūnicus, -a, -um.
punish, multō, 1; pūniō, 4.
punishment, poena, -ae, F.
purpose, cōnsilium, -ī, N.; rēs, reī, F.
pursue, īnsequor, 3, -cūtus; persequor.
pursuit, studium, -ī, N.
put (to death), interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus, 3; **(in charge)** praepōnō, 3, -posuī, -positus.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, M.
Pythagoras, Pȳthagorās, -ae, M.
Pythia, Pȳthia, -ae, F.

Q

quickly, celeriter; cito.
quickness, celeritās, -ātis, F.
Quintus, Quīntus, -ī, M.
Quirites, Quirītēs, -ium, M.
quit, discēdō (3, -cessī, -cessūrus) ab.

R

race, stadium, -ī, N.
ram, ariēs, -etis, M.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, N.
rank, dignitās, -ātis, F.
rapine, rapīna, -ae, F.
rashness, temeritās, -ātis, F.
rate, *v.*, aestimō, 1.
rather, magis; potius.
reach, veniō (4, vēnī, ventum) ad (in).
read, legō, 3, lēgī, lēctus.
ready, prōmptus, -a, -um; *get ready*, comparō, 1.
real, bonus, -a, -um; vērus, -a, -um.
reason, causa, -ae, F.; ratiō, -ōnis, F.
receive, accipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus; excipiō; suscipiō.
recite, recitō, 1.
recollection, recordātiō, -ōnis, F.
reconnoitre, explōrō, 1.
recourse, have, dēscendō, 3, -dī, -scēnsus.
refuse, negō, 1.
regard, habeō, 2; putō, 1.
regular, iūstus, -a, -um.
reign, rēgnō, 1.
rejoice, gaudeō, 2, gāvīsus; laetor, 1.
relate, memorō, 1.
relieve, relaxō, 1; sublevō, 1.
remain, maneō, 2, -mānsī, -mān-

sūrus; permaneō; remaneō; restō, 1, -stitī, ——.
remains, reliquiae, -ārum, F.
remarkable, īnsīgnis, -e; praeclārus, -a, -um.
remedy, remedium, -ī, N.
remember, meminī, -isse; reminīscor, 3, ——.
remind, admoneō, 2.
remote, remōtus, -a, -um.
remove, *intr.*, dēmigrō, 1; *tr.*, tollō, 3, sustulī, sublātus.
render, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus.
repay, remūneror, 1.
reply, respondeō, 2, -dī, -spōnsus.
report, *n.*, fāma, -ae, F.
report, *v.*, dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus; renūntiō, 1.
represent, faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.
reproach, reprehēnsiō, ōnis, F.
republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.
resign, sē abdicāre.
resist, resistō, 3, -stitī, ——.
resolve, dēcernō, 3, -crēvī, -crētus.
resources, opēs, -um, F.
rest, *the rest*, cēterī, -ōrum, M.; *the rest of*, reliquus, -a, -um.
rest, *v.*, quiēscō, 3, quiēvī, -ētus.
retain, retineō, 2, -uī, -tentus.
retire, abeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus.
retreat, sē recipere.
return, *intr.*, redeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus; revertor, 3, -sus (*perf.* usually revertī); *tr.*, reddō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
reward, praemium, -ī, N.; frūctus, -ūs, M.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -ī, M.
Rhone, Rhodanus, -ī, M.
rich, dīves, -itis; locuplēs, -ētis.
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, F.
right, *adj.*, aequus, -a, -um; dexter, -tra, -trum; rēctus, -a, -um.
right, *n.*, iūs, iūris, N.
rightly (**right**), rēctē; iūre.
river, flūmen, -inis, N.
road, via, -ae, F.; iter, itineris, N.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, F.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, M.
Roscius, Rōscius, -ī, M.
round, rotundus, -a, -um.
royal, rēgālis, -e.
ruin, *n.*, perniciēs, -ēī, F.
ruin, *v.*, adflīgō, 3, -īxī, -ictus.
rule, *n.*, praeceptum, -ī, N.
rule as king, rēgnō, 1.
run, currō, 3, cucurrī, cursūrus; (after) sector, 1.
rush, ruō, 3, ruī, rutus; (upon) invādō, 3, -vāsī, -vāsūrus.

S

Sabinus, Sabīnus, -ī, M.
sacred, sacer, -cra, -crum.
sadness, maestitia, -ae, F.
safe, salvus, -a, -um; tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, F.
Saguntum, Saguntum, -ī, N.
sail, nāvigō, 1.
sake; *for the sake*, causā.
sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, F.
sally forth, sē ēicere.
same, īdem, eadem, idem; *at the same time*, simul.
sanctuary, fānum, -ī, N.
Sardis, Sardēs, -ium, F.
satisfy, satisfaciō, 3, -fēcī, -factus
Saturn, Sāturnus, -ī, M.

save, servō, 1.
say, dīcō, 3; **loquor**, 3, -cūtus; (**not**) negō, 1.
school, schola, -ae, F.
Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, M.
sea, mare, -is, N.
seacoast, ōra maritima (-ae), F.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
secondly, deinde; *a second time*, iterum.
see, videō, 2, vīdī, vīsus; cernō, 3, crēvī, crētus; (**clearly**) perspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus.
seek, petō, 3, -īvī, -ītus; quaerō, 3, -sīvī, -sītus; requīrō; (**after**) expetō.
seem, videor, 2, vīsus.
Segestans, Segestānī, -ōrum, M.
seize, capiō, 3, cēpī, captus.
self, ipse, -a, -um; *pers. pron.*
sell, vēndō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
Sempronius, Semprōnius, -ī, M.
senate, senātus, -ūs, M.
senator, senātor, -ōris, M.
send, mittō, 3, mīsī, missus; (**forward**) praemittō; (**out**) ēmittō.
September, September, -bris, -bre (*adj.*).
serious, gravis, -e.
seriously, graviter.
Sertorius, Sertōrius, -ī, M.
serve (as soldier), mīlitō, 1.
service, *plur.*, beneficia, -ōrum, N.
Sestius, Sēstius, -ī, M.
set (**out**), proficīscor, 3, -fectus; (**sail**) nāvem (-is) solvō, 3, solvī, solūtus; (**up**) ērigō, 3, -rēxī, -rēctus; īnstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus.
settle, cōnstituō, 3, -uī, -ūtus; perficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus.
settlement, compositiō, -ōnis, F.
seven hundred, septingentī, -ae, -a.
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
several, complūrēs, -a (-ia); nōnnūllī, -ae, -a.
severe, gravis, -e.
Sextus, Sextus, -ī, M.
she-wolf, lupa, -ae, F.
shield, scūtum, -ī, N.
ship, nāvis, -is, F.
short, brevis, -e; (**address**) pauca.
shortly before, sub.
shortness, brevitās, -ātis, F.
should (= ought), dēbeō, 2.
show, doceō, 2, -uī, -tus; ostendō, 3, -dī, -tus.
shun, fugiō, 3, fūgī, fugitūrus.
shut, claudō, 3, clausī, clausus.
Sicily, Sicilia, -ae, F.
side; *from all sides*, undique.
siege, oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, F.
sight, cōnspectus, -ūs, M.
signal, signum, -ī, N.
silent, **be**, taceō, 2.
silver, *adj.*, argenteus, -a, -um.
silver, *n.*, argentum, -ī, N.
similarly, similiter.
since, cum; quoniam; ab.
single, singulī, -ae, -a; ūnus, -a, -um.
sister, soror, -ōris, F.
situated, positus, -a, -um.
six hundred, sescentī, -ae, -a.
skilful, **skilled**, perītus, -a, -um.
skin, pellis, -is, F.
slander, maledīcō, 3, -dīxī, -dictus.
slaughter, caedēs, -is, F.
slave, servus, -ī, M.; *be a slave to*, serviō, 4.

slay, interficiō, 3, -fēcī, -fectus; occidō, 3, -cīdī, -cīsus.
sleep, somnus, -ī, M.
slender, exiguus, -a, -um.
so, ita; sīc; tam; adeō; *and so*, itaque; (**far**) tantō; (**many**) tot; (**large, much**) tantus, -a -um; *so that*, ut.
sober, sōbrius, -a, -um.
Socrates, Sōcratēs, -is, M.
soil, ager, agrī, M.
soldier, mīles, -itis, M.
solitude, solitūdō, -inis, F.
some, aliquis (-quī), -qua, -quid (-quod); *some . . . others*, aliī . . . aliī; *sometimes omitted.*
sometimes, interdum; nōnnumquam.
somewhat, aliquid.
son, fīlius, -ī, M.
song, carmen, -inis, N.
soon, *as soon as possible*, quam prīmum.
sooner, prius; celerius.
sorry, be, paenitet, 2, -uit (*impers.*); *be sorry for*, doleō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
soul, animus, -ī, M.
sound, *adj.*, sānus, -a, -um.
sound, *v.*, tentō, 1.
Spain, Hispānia, -ae, F.
Spaniard, Hispānus, -ī, M.
spare, parcō, 3, pepercī, parsus; cōnservō, 1.
sparing, parcus, -a, -um.
speak, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus; loquor, 3, -cūtus.
speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, F.
speedily, mātūrē.
spirit, animus, -ī, M.
splendid, amplus, -a, -um.
spring, *n.*, vēr, vēris, N.
spring, *v.*, orior, 4 (3), ortus.
stake, pālus, -ī, M.
start, proficīscor, 3, -fectus.
state, cīvitās, -ātis, F.; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, F.; (= *condition*) adfectiō, -ōnis, F.
station, conlocō, 1.
statue, simulācrum, -ī, N.; statua, -ae, F.
stature, statūra, -ae, F.
stay, maneō, 2, -mānsī, -mānsūrus.
step-mother, noverca, -ae, F.
still, tamen.
stone, lapis, -idis, M.
story, fābula, -ae, F.
strange, mīrus, -a, -um.
stream, amnis, -is, M.
strength, vīs, vīs, F.
strengthen, fīrmō, 1.
strike down, sternō, 3, strāvī, strātus.
strive, nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus).
strong, rōbustus, -a, -um; *be strong*, valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
study, *n.*, studium, -ī, N.
study, *v.*, studeō, 2, -uī, ——.
stunned, be, stupeō, 2, -uī, ——.
stupefied, attonitus, -a, -um.
subdue, subigō, 3, -ēgī, -āctus; dēvincō, 3, -vīcī, -victus; (**thoroughly**) perdomō, 1, -uī, -itus.
such, tālis, -e; (= *so great*) tantus, -a, -um.
suddenly, repente.
Suevi, Suēvī, -ōrum, M.
suffer, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; (punishment) dō, dare, dedī, datus.
sufficient, satis.

Sulla, Sūlla, -ae, M.
summon, acciō, 4; convocō, 1.
sun, sōl, -is, M.
suppliant, supplex, -icis, C.
suppose, exīstimō, 1.
surpass, superō, 1; vincō, 3, vīci, victus; praestō, 1, -stitī, -stitus.
surrender, dēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus.
surround, circumsistō, 3, -stetī (-stitī), ——.
suspect, suspicor, 1.
suspicious, suspīciōsus, -a, -um.
swallow, hirūndō, -inis, F.
swear, iūrō, 1.
sweet, dulcis, -e.
swiftness, vēlōcitās, -ātis, F.
swim, nō, 1, nāvī, ——.
sword, gladius, -ī, M.; ferrum, -ī, N.
Syracusans, Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, M.
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, F.
Syros, of, Sȳrius, -a, -um.

T

take, sūmō, 3, -psī, -ptus; expūgnō, 1; (**around**) circumdūcō, 3, -dūxī, -ductus; (**away**) ēripiō, 3, -uī, -reptus; adimō, 3, -ēmī, -ēmptus; (**care of**) prōspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus; (**counsel**) cōnsulō, 3, -uī, -tus; (**part in**) intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus; (**up**) capiō, 3, cēpī, captus; (**it hard**) molestē ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; (**by surprise**) opprimō, 3, -pressī, -pressus; (**a journey**), faciō, 3, fēcī, factus.
talent, talentum, -ī, N.; ingenium, -ī, N.
talk, loquor, 3, -cūtus; conloquor.
Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, M.
task, pēnsum, -ī, N.
teach, doceō, 2, -uī, -tus.
tear, lacrima, -ae, F.
tell, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus; nārrō, 1.
temperance, temperantia, -ae, F.
temperate, abstinēns, -entis.
temple, aedēs, -is, F.; templum, -ī, N.
ten, decem.
tend, pertineō, 2, -uī, ——.
terms, condiciōnēs, -um, F.
territory, ager, -grī, M.
Thames, Tamesis, -is, M.
than, quam; nisī; *abl. of comp.*
that, *conj.*, ut (uti); quīn; nē; quod; quō *w. comp.*; *introducing ind. disc. not translated; demon. pron.*, is, ea, id; ille, -a, -ud; (**of yours, near you**) iste, -a, -ud; *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.
the, *usually not expressed.*
theft, fūrtum, -ī, N.
their, *gen. plur. of* is, ea, id; suus, -a, -um; *usually not expressed.*
Themistocles, Themistoclēs, -is, M.
themselves, suī; ipsī, -ae, -a.
then, tum; igitur.
there, ibi; *as expletive not expressed.*
therefore, itaque; igitur; proinde.
Thermopylæ, Thermopylae, -ārum, F.
they, *plur. of* is, ea, id; *usually not expressed.*
thing, rēs, reī, F.
think, arbitror, 1; cēnseō, 2, -uī, -sus; exīstimō, 1; putō, 1; sentiō, 4, -sēnsī, -sēnsus.
thirty, trīgintā.

this, hīc, haec, hōc; is, ea, id.
though, cum; licet; quamquam; *implied in participle.*
thousand, mīlle.
threaten, immineō, 2, ——, ——; minor, 1; minitor, 1.
three, trēs, tria.
three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.
through, throughout, per; *ablative.*
throw, iaciō, 3, iēcī, iactus.
Thucydides, Thūcȳdidēs, -is, M.
thus, sīc.
Tiberius, Tiberius, -ī, M.
tie, dēligō, 1.
till, *conj.*, dum.
till, *v.*, colō, 3, -uī, cultus.
time, tempus, -oris, N.; (**of life**) aetās, -ātis, F.; *at that time*, tum; *for a long time*, iam diū.
timid, timidus, -a, -um.
Titus, Titus, -ī, M.
to, *dative; acc. of limit;* **ut**; *infinitive; rel. of purpose; prep.*, ad; in.
to-day, hodiē.
toga, toga, -ae, F.
together with, ūnā cum.
toil, *n.*, labor, -ōris, M.
toil, *v.*, labōrō, 1.
torch, lampas, -adis, F.
towards, in; ergā.
town, oppidum, -ī, N.; urbs, -is, F.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, M.
train, exerceō, 2, -uī, -itus.
traitor, prōditor, -ōris, M.
Trajan, Trāiānus, -ī, M.
tranquil, tranquillus, -a, -um.
transaction, negōtium, -ī, N.
travel over, perambulō, 1.
treachery, prōditiō, -ōnis, F.; dolum, -ī, N.
treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, F.
tree, arbor, -oris, F.
trench, fossa, -ae, F.
Treveri, Treverī, -ōrum, M.
trial, iūdicium, -ī, N.
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, M.
triumph, triumphō, 1.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, F.
troubled, turbidus, -a, -um.
troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trust, crēdō, 3, -didī, -ditus; (**in**) cōnfīdō, 3, -fīsus.
try, experior, 4, -pertus; tentō, 1.
Tullia, Tullia, -ae, F.
turn, sē vertere.
twelve, duodecim.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, -ae, -o; bīnī, -ae, -a.
tyrant, tyrannus, -ī, M.
Tyrtaeus, Tyrtaeus, -ī, M.

U

unaccustomed, īnsuētus, -a, -um.
uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
uncle, avunculus, -ī, M.
uncovered, dētēctus, -a, -um.
under, sub.
understand, intellegō, 3, -lēxī, -lēctus; nōscō, 3, nōvī, nōtus; perspiciō, 3, -spexī, -spectus.
undertake, suscipiō, 3, -cēpī, -ceptus; excipiō.
ungodly, impius, -a, -um.
unincumbered, expedītus, -a, -um.
union, coniūnctiō, -ōnis, F.
unite, [sē] coniungere.

universe, mundus, -ī, M.
unless, nisi.
unpopularity, invidia, -ae, F.
unseemly, dēformis, -e.
unwilling, **be**, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——.
unworthy, indīgnus, -a, -um.
upon, in.
up to, sub.
urge, adhortor, 1.
use, ūsus, -ūs, M.
use, **make use of**, ūtor, 3, ūsus.
utter, dīcō, 3, dīxī, dictus.

V

vacate, vacuēfaciō, 3, -fēcī, -factus.
vain, **in**, frūstrā.
valor, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
venture, audeō, 2, ausus.
Venusia, Venusia, -ae, F.
Vercingetorix, Vercingetorīx, -īgis, M.
Verres, Verrēs, -is, M.
verse, versus, -ūs, M.
very, *expressed by superl.*; (**much**) valdē.
victor, victor, -ōris, M.
victory, victōria, -ae, F.
vigorous, valēns, -entis.
vigorously, ācriter.
village, vīcus, -ī, M.
violence, vīs, vīs, F.
violently, ācriter.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, F.
virtuously, cum virtūte.
visit, adeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus; vīsō, 3, vīsī, ——.
voice, vōx, vōcis, F.
vote, sententia, -ae, F.
vow, voveō, 2, vōvī, vōtus.

W

walk, ambulō, 1; incēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus.
wall, mūrus, -ī, M.; moenia, -ium, N.; pariēs, -etis, M.
wander, vagor, 1.
war, bellum, -ī, N.
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
watchful, vigilāns, -antis.
water, aqua, -ae, F.
way, iter, itineris, N.; modus, -ī, M.; ratiō, -ōnis, F.
we, nōs, nostrūm (-ī).
weak, aeger, -gra, -grum.
wealth, dīvitiae, -ārum, F.
wealthy, locuplēs, -ētis.
weary, **be**, taedet, 2, -uit (pertaesum est).
weave together, contexō, 3, -uī, -tus.
wedding, nūptiae, -ārum, F.
weight, pondus, -eris, N.
welfare, rēs, reī, F.
well, **be**, valeō, 2, -uī, -itūrus.
well-known, nōbilis, -e.
well-regulated, bene īnstitūtus, -a, -um.
well-to-do, bonus, -a, -um.
what, *rel.*, quī, quae, quod (quid); *interrog.*, quis, quae, quid (quod); quālis, -e.
when, cum; ubi; ut; *implied in participle.*
whenever, cum.
where, ubi.
wherefore, quam ob rem.
whether, -ne; utrum; *whether . . . or*, utrum . . . an (-ne).
which, qui, quae, quod; (**of two**) uter, utra, utrum.
while, dum; *implied in participle.*

whither, quō.
whithersoever, quōcumque.
who, *rel.*, quī, quae; *interrog.*, quis, quae.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um; omnis, -e; ūniversus, -a, -um.
why, cūr; quid.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
width, lātitūdō, -inis, F.
wife, coniūnx (-iux), -iugis, F.; uxor, -ōris, F.
will, nūtum, -ī, N.; voluntās, -ātis, F.
willing, be, volō, velle, voluī, ——.
win, adipīscor, -ī, -eptus; vincō, 3, vīcī, victus.
wine, vīnum, -ī, N.
winter, *adj.*, hībernus, -a, -um.
winter, *n.*, hiems, hiemis, F.
winter, *v.*, hiemō, 1.
winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, N.
wisdom, cōnsilium, -ī, N.; sapientia, -ae, F.
wise, sapiēns, -entis.
wish (for), volō, velle, voluī, ——; cupiō, 3, -īvī, -ītus.
with, apud; cum; *ablative; genitive.*
withdraw, concēdō, 3, -cessī, -cessūrus; sē recipere; discēdō, 3.
within, intrā; *ablative.*
without, sine; quīn; *be without*, careō, 2, -uī, -itūrus; vacō, 1.
woman, mulier, -eris, F.
wonder at, mīror, 1.
wont, be, soleō, 2, -itus.
wood, silva, -ae, F.
word, verbum, -ī, N.
work, opera, -ae, F.; opus, operis, N.
world, orbis (-is, M.) terrārum.
worthy, dīgnus, -a, -um.
would that, utinam.
wound, *n.*, volnus, -eris, N.
wound, *v.*, volnerō, 1.
wrest, ēripiō, 3, -ripuī, -reptus.
wretched, miser, -era, -erum.
write, scrībō, 3, -psī, -ptus.
wrong, facinus, -oris, N.; iniūria, -ae, F.

X

Xenophon, Xenophōn, -ōntis, M.
Xerxes, Xerxēs, -is, M.

Y

year, annus, -ī, M.; *two years*, biennium, -ī, N.
yellow, flāvus, -a, -um.
yes, immō; *repeat the verb.*
yet, tamen.
yield, cēdō, 3, cessī, cessūrus.
yoke, iugum, -ī, N.
you, *sing.*, tū, tuī; *plur.*, vōs, vestrūm (-ī).
young, young man, adulēscēns, -entis; iuvenis, -e.
younger, minor [nātū], -ōris.
your, *sing.*, tuus, -a, -um; *plur.*, vester, -tra, -trum; (**self**) tē; (**selves**) vōs; *dative.*
youth, adulēscentia, -ae, F.; iuventūs, -ūtis, F.

Z

Zama, Zama, -ae, F.
zealously, studiōsē.
Zeuxis, Zeuxis, -idis (*acc.* -im or -in).

COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATION PAPERS

Bowdoin, June, 1905

Elementary

I alone, a general clad-in-the-toga, seem likely to (to be about to) quell this war. Under my administration (abl. abs.) not even wickedness will suffer punishment. But by manifest recklessness, by dangers threatening the fatherland, this leniency can be destroyed (*intereo*). But if this shall happen, no good (man) and few bad (men) will be put to death (*intereo*).

Advanced

That Scipio is deservedly illustrious who forced Hannibal to leave Italy and return to Africa. So also is the other Scipio, who destroyed two cities bitterly hostile to the Roman people, Carthage and Numantia. The famous general Paulus was honored in his triumph by the captive Perses, once a powerful king, but then following in chains the victor's car. Marius also gained immortal glory; above all, Pompeius, whose exploits are bounded only by the course of the sun itself. Yet even among these great men I hope there will be some place for my glory. It is [the business] of generals to open up new provinces; but what would that avail, unless this city were pre-

served to which they might return victorious? They have vanquished external, I, domestic foes. And my work is the more dangerous, because I must live hereafter with my bitterest enemies.

Harvard, June, 1905

Elementary

You all see that the wickedness of my enemies has been stirred up by somebody. If they should repent of their fury, they would gain great glory. But these men are so base that I am prepared to threaten them with death.

Advanced

Cæsar, fearing that Dumnorix would stir up the Gauls, determined to take him into Britain. But Dumnorix said to the Gauls that Cæsar would kill all whom he took across the sea. Accordingly, while the Romans were so busy with the ships that no one noticed him, he left the camp accompanied by horsemen. But Cæsar sent other horsemen to bring him back, and said to them, "If he should not obey you, kill him." Dumnorix did resist and was killed, shouting that he was a free man in a free state. — Based on Cæsar: *Gallic War*, V, 6, 7.

Yale, June, 1905

Some accused Cicero because he did not arrest Catiline, but allowed him to escape. But Cicero did this because he thought that there were many citizens who did not believe that a conspiracy existed. If he had then punished Catiline as he deserved, there would have been many who would have considered him a cruel tyrant

rather than a careful consul. But when Cicero had delivered his first speech against Catiline in the senate and frightened him so that he fled from the city, it then became clear to all that the state was in great danger, and that there was no more room for leniency. And they rejoiced that Cicero had driven so dangerous a man from the city, so that the citizens might be safe from the nefarious crimes of these profligate and abandoned men.

University of Wisconsin, 1905

Ariovistus said that he had crossed the Rhine because the Gauls had summoned him; that he was not waging war against the Gauls, but the Gauls against him; that all their forces had been routed by him, but if they wished to fight again, they should know that he was ready.

Fellow citizens, I have said enough in regard to the nature of this war. Let us now consider who ought to be the commander. If there were many great men, this would be difficult. But they are few (would that this were not so) — and of them all one only is worthy of this office.

Williams, June, 1905

1. Cæsar ordered a lieutenant in command of (*cum*) two legions to climb (*ascendere*) the mountain. Having done so (*abl. abs.*), the lieutenant waited for the rest of the army. On learning through scouts that the enemy had moved away, Cæsar followed them.

2. "What cruelty," said Cicero, "can there be in punishing a crime so great? I am prompted not by a savage disposition, but by pity. For I seem to see this

city, the light of the world, falling in flames. If, therefore, I should be negligent in this case I must undergo (form of *subire*) a reputation for cruelty toward the state."

Change the last sentence of this passage into indirect discourse, depending on *Cicero dixit.*

George Washington University, May, 1904

1. After the cavalry had departed, the soldiers entered the camp two-by-two.

2. Upon his arrival, the younger men, although they had been frightened by the enemy, exhorted one another to resist the attack, and sent messengers to say that they would not surrender.

3. For if I had not persuaded myself, from boyhood, that nothing in life should be greatly sought for, except glory, and that in pursuing it all dangers should be considered of little importance, I would never have exposed myself to so many and so great attacks of wicked men, in defence of your safety.

Dartmouth, June, 1905

Elementary

In no other case since the founding of the city have all good men held one and the same opinion. Senators and Knights are so agreed that they vie with each other in love of country. And if this harmony shall have been confirmed during my consulship, we may hope that it will be perpetual.

Advanced

He even confesses that he is an enemy, and now that we have a wall between him and us, why should we fear

either Catiline or those who do not hesitate to follow that worst of leaders into the most shameful of crimes? Much more to be dreaded now are those who still remain at Rome, since by concealing their hatred they may deceive you all, and yet we do not so much desire to punish them as to reform them, if it can be done.

University of Chicago, June, 1905

Elementary

1. He asked the boy whether he wanted to go back to his father.

2. Africanus used to praise Xenophon for saying that the same labors were not equally hard on commander and private soldier.

3. He was prevented by his friends from entering the city as a conqueror.

4. He promised to remain in his father's house for two months.

5. He has sent horsemen to lay waste[1] the fields.

6. The oracles[2] say that the Romans will conquer many nations, but that they themselves will be conquered by none.

7. It is only the brave whom fortune favors: if you rely upon[3] yourself, your soldiers will rely on you.

8. There is no doubt that he made that speech to please his friends.

9. The infantry charged with such impetuosity[4] that, had not night come on, they would have captured the camp.

[1] Lay waste, **vasto, -are**. [2] Oracle, **oraculum, -i**. [3] Rely upon, **confido, -ere**. [4] Impetuosity, **impetus, -us**.

10. One of the legions was given to Fabius to be led against the enemy.

11. There is no one who does not think that he is guilty.[1]

12. Cicero declared frequently that if Pompey had not left Italy, Rome would not have been captured.

Advanced

All was lost: so Vercingetorix clearly saw. Next morning he summoned the chiefs to him. He told them that he had fought not for himself but for his countrymen; and since all men must yield[2] to fortune, he was ready to do what they thought best — to die, if they wished to appease[3] the Romans by his death, or to give himself up as a prisoner of war. They accepted his offer, and consented to save their own lives by surrendering[4] their leader. Ambassadors were sent to learn the will[5] of the conqueror. He ordered the chiefs to be brought before him, and all the arms to be surrendered. The chiefs were led forth, and Cæsar received their submission.[6] Vercingetorix rode on his horse around the tribunal[7] on which Cæsar was sitting, and then leaping to the ground laid down his sword, and bowed himself at Cæsar's feet.

AMHERST, JUNE, 1905

At first the ambassadors said that they would report these conditions to their countrymen, and that three days

[1] Guilty, noxius, -a, -um. [2] Cedo, -ere. [3] Placo, -are. [4] Dedo, -ere. [5] Arbitrium, ii. [6] Receive in submission, accipio in fidem. [7] Tribunal, -alis, n.

later, after having deliberated on the matter, they would return to Cæsar. They then asked him not to advance his camp nearer their boundaries. Cæsar replied that he could not grant that request, for he had learned from some fugitives that they had sent some days earlier a large part of their cavalry over the Meuse to the Ambivarii for the purpose of plundering and procuring needed supplies. Cæsar knew well enough that they had been trying to deceive him, and that if they had told the whole truth, they would have admitted that they were waiting for the return of this horse, and were trying to secure a delay for this reason. Discouraged and not knowing how to contend with such a skilful general, they returned home with sad hearts.

LELAND STANFORD JR. UNIVERSITY, SEPTEMBER, 1902

Elementary

1. Cæsar sent his forces to the town of Bibrax in Gaul. 2. He also asked the people of this town for supplies. 3. The battle was begun at three o'clock, but a few hours later night put an end to the fighting. 4. In this battle Sabinus with a large number of soldiers made a sortie from two gates. 5. It was reported that the Gauls, relying on their former victories, would storm the town. 6. The soldiers complain that they had been led into Germany against their wills and without their knowledge. 7. There was no doubt that Cæsar was eager to set out. 8. They could not be persuaded to render aid. 9. He asked whether the light-armed Numidians had been led across the bridge. 10. A large

force was sent from Rome to subdue the Gauls. 11. It is to our interest not to injure any one. 12. Cæsar says at that time one part of Gaul was occupied by the Aquitanians.

Advanced

There is no one so unfriendly to the muses that he is not glad to hear his own achievements praised by the poets. On being asked by some one at Athens to whose voice he listened with the greatest pleasure, Themistocles is said to have answered, "To his by whom my own deeds are extolled in verse." Likewise the celebrated Marius had great fondness for L. Plotius, thinking that through the latter's genius his own victories would be celebrated. For the same reason the elder Scipio became the friend of the poet Ennius. So, also, Alexander the Great recognized how great is the value of the poet's art when he cried out at the tomb of Achilles: "Most fortunate of all men wast thou, O youth, in that thou hadst Homer as the herald of thy greatness." It is, however, not only these great men themselves that are honored, but the glory of their fatherlands is also handed down to posterity. Even Greece, if the Iliad had not existed, would have lost her greatest renown.

PRINCETON, JUNE, 1905

Elementary

Translate into Latin section A and either B or C.

A. 1. If Cæsar had not led his cavalry against the Gauls, he could not have conquered them.

2. When the Gauls saw that he would attack them, they retreated in another direction.

3. Cicero made a speech for the purpose of driving Catiline from Rome.

B. Cæsar wished to cross the river in order to drive the enemy from their camp, which had been placed on the top of a hill. For he had been told that they had come out from their camp and were plundering the country, and that although his light-armed troops had attacked them, they had not fled.

C. I will manage the matter in such a way, citizens, that the wicked shall suffer punishment for their crimes, and, trusting to the help of the gods, I promise you that if you punish these few men, the whole city will be safe.

Advanced

Let us now determine what limits there are in friendship. I find that there are current three opinions, but I do not agree with any of them. In my opinion they are worthy of friendship, in whom there exists a reason why they should be loved. Yet most men pick their friends as they do cattle, those from whom they hope to receive the greatest advantage. Such men never find that most beautiful and natural friendship, which is desirable for itself alone, for a true friend is as it were a second self.

WELLESLEY, 1904

1. The next day they moved the camp from that place. Cæsar did the same and sent forward all the cavalry to the number of four thousand to see in what

direction the enemy were marching. Word was brought to Cæsar that these, following too eagerly upon the enemy's rear, had engaged in battle with the cavalry of the Helvetians and had been repulsed. Cæsar kept his men from fighting, until by forced marches they had come to a place about six miles distant from the enemy's camp. Then at last Liscus was persuaded to tell what he knew of the plans of the Hædui.

2. Since I have spoken of the character of the war, I will now say a few words as to its magnitude. For this can be said, that the war is so necessary that it must be waged, not so great that it must be dreaded.

3. Therefore, fellow-citizens, do you, as I have said, defend your houses by night-watches: I have made provision that the city should have sufficient protection without any disturbance.

Columbia, September, 1904

At the end of my year of office, I was quite sure that at Rome no one could be talking of anything but my quæstorship (*quaestura*). I had sent to the capital a large supply of grain at a time when it was sorely needed. In Sicily, all agreed that I deserved most unusual honors. But, in the course of my journey home, I happened to come to Puteoli, at a season of the year when that town is always crowded with distinguished men. To tell you the truth, I almost fainted (*concido*), when one of these asked me on what day I had left Rome. When I told him, with dignity, that I was returning from my province, "O yes, of course (*mehercule*)," he replied, "I remember now, from Africa."

University of California, January, 1905

Elementary

Scipio heard that Hannibal was in Gaul and at once sent a few horsemen to learn what he was doing. Lælius, who was in command of these soldiers, left camp at the third hour. When he had marched four days, he came to a large river. Having crossed this by a bridge, he pitched camp. Lælius thought that his men could not be attacked by the enemy, because the camp was surrounded by such a wide river that the latter could not cross it.

Advanced

Upon this point I will not say more at present. Last of all there was the fact that a seasonable return from this region rather than a longer advance was sought by our soldiers. Mithridates, on the other hand, had strengthened the army which had been collected from his own kingdom, and was aided by the forces of many kings and nations. Now we have observed that it is wont to happen that the misfortunes of kings easily win the aid of many, especially of those who either are kings or live in a kingdom, so that the royal name seems to be great and holy.

University of Pennsylvania, June, 1905

Elementary

(*a*) When they arrived there, they learned that the enemy had retreated. (*b*) There they pitched camp and awaited his arrival. (*c*) If we occupy the higher posi-

tions, we can easily withstand their attack. (*d*) At that time he had four legions with him in Gaul. (*e*) When this work is finished, that traitor will depart for Massilia. (*f*) I fear that in the same night he will set fire to the city. (*g*) If Catiline is driven out, will he not go to the camp of Manlius? (*h*) There were some who thought that he would stay at Rome.

Advanced

Now I wish to warn those who have remained in the city and even those who have been left in the city by Catiline, in order that they may destroy it and all of you. I cannot forget that this is my native country, that I am consul, and that I must either live along with my fellow-citizens or die for them. Therefore, if the conspirators wish to go forth, there is nothing to prevent them from doing so; but if they remain here, I shall detect not only any act, but even any attempt which they may make against the safety of all.

Brown University, June, 1905

Elementary

1. Cæsar asked them what states were in arms.

2. Cæsar remembered that they had killed the consul and had sent the Roman army under the yoke.

3. When the envoys returned, Cæsar told them that he could not permit them to go through the province.

4. No one can be found so desperate as not to believe that Catiline is a deadly enemy of the state.

Advanced

1. Dumnorix was a man of great daring, and was very popular among the common people. He had long used his influence to bring about a revolution. He had always supported at his own expense a large number of cavalry and kept them about him. The Romans knew that he was devoted to the cause of the Helvetians and that he detested the very name of Cæsar, because by his arrival his own influence had been lessened and that of his brother was increased.

2. Cicero made provision that the city should have a sufficiently strong guard. He had informed the municipal towns that Catiline intended to make an attack on them by night, and he warned them to be ready to defend themselves. The Roman orator tells us in one of his orations against Catiline that the conspirators regarded the gladiators as the most reliable part of their forces, but that in reality they were better disposed towards the state than many of the patricians.

TABLE OF SYNONYMS

NOTE. — This table contains only such words as are needed in the exercises. It is intended merely as an introduction to the study of synonyms, and is adapted as far as possible to preparatory students.

ABANDON. See **LEAVE.**

ACCOUNT: ON ACCOUNT OF. — **ob**: denoting the object in view. — **causā**: denoting the purpose in view. — **propter** (**prope**, near): denoting a proximate cause or motive. — **ablative of cause**: chiefly with verbs of emotion.

ACQUAINTED (be). See **KNOW.**

ADMIT. See **CONFESS.**

AFRAID. See **FEAR.**

AGAIN. — **iterum**: a second time. — **rūrsus**: of any repetition. — **re-**: prefix of many verbs.

AID. — **auxilium**: usually sudden and external assistance to those struggling. — **subsidium**: against the time of need; the reserve. — **praesidium**: protecting aid; guard, garrison, etc.

ALL. — **omnis**: all without exception; opp. to **nūllī**, **paucī**, etc. (number). — **tōtus**: whole, entire; opp. to separate parts (quantity). — **ūniversus**: all taken collectively; opp. to single.

ALLOW. — **patior**: to suffer (patiently), to tolerate. — **concēdō**: to yield on entreaty; opp. to **repūgnō**. — **permittō**; of one's own free will; opp. to **vetō**. — **licet** = it is lawful.

ALMOST. — **ferē**: about, generally; especially of number and time. — **paene**, **prope**, nearly, but not quite.

ALSO. — **etiam** emphasizes and strengthens. — **quoque** (postpositive) adds a new thought. — **īdem** repeats or emphasizes the subject in a coördinate clause. — **item**: in like manner.

ANCIENT. See **OLD.**

AND. — **et** connects words and expressions of equal importance. — **-que** (enclitic) joins a word closely to another. — **atque** (**ac**) adds what is of more importance.

ANOTHER. See **OTHER.**

ANY: ANY ONE, ANY THING. — **ūllus**, adj., **quisquam**, noun: with a negation expressed or implied. — **aliquis**: some one or other. — **quis**: fainter than **aliquis**; usually after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, and **num**. — **quīvīs**: any you please. — **quīcumque**; any whatever.

APPOINT. — See **CALL**.

ARMS. — **arma**: the general term. — **tēla**: missiles.

ARMY. — **exercitus**: as a trained body, the general term. — **āgmen**: on the march, troops. — **aciēs**: in battle array; line of battle.

ASCERTAIN. See **FIND**.

ASK. — **rogō**: general term; to ask for an answer or opinion. — **ōrō**: stronger word; to beg, pray, entreat. — **obsecrō**: to conjure by all that is holy. — **implōrō**: to entreat with tears. — **petō**, **expetō**: to seek to obtain something by request or demand. — **postulō**: to demand as of right. — **flāgitō**, **efflāgitō**: to demand earnestly or impatiently. — **quaerō**, **requīrō**: to search out with a view of getting definite information.

ASSISTANCE. See **AID**.

AT ONCE. See **IMMEDIATELY**.

ATTACK. — **adeō**, **adgredior**: to approach with hostile intent. — **adorior**: the same, but generally of a sudden attack. — **petō**: to aim at, rush upon, especially with a sword. — **impetum faciō**: of a violent attack. — **oppūgnō**: oftenest of attacking a town.

ATTEMPT. — **cōnor**: to try with energy. — **experior**: with a view to learn by experiment. — **tentō**: to try, prove, test.

AVENGE. See **PUNISH**.

BATTLE. — **pūgna**: the general word for any kind of a conflict. — **aciēs**: the conflict of two armies in battle array. — **proelium**: skirmish, engagement; of separate divisions of an army.

BECAUSE OF. See **ACCOUNT**.

BEG. See **ASK**.

BEGIN. — **ineō**: to enter upon, engage in. — **initium capiō (faciō)**: similar to **ineō**. — **incipiō**: to take in hand; with tenses of incomplete action. — **coepī**: the same; with tenses of completed action. — **īnstituō**: (to put in place), undertake. — **ōrdior**: to begin, as opposed to advancing.

BESEECH. See **ASK**.

BESIEGE. — **obsideō**: by regular works. — **oppūgnō**: by assault or storm. — **expūgnō**: to besiege successfully.

BID. — **iubeō**: the general word. — **imperō**: by virtue of power vested in one. — **mandō**: to charge or commission. — **praescrībō**:

to prescribe, dictate: of a superior to an inferior. — **praesum**: to be at the head of, have charge of. — **praecipiō**: by right of authority.

BURN. — **incendō**: to set on fire, kindle. — **īnflammō**: with bright flames. — **combūrō, exūrō**: to burn up, consume. — **cremō**: to destroy by burning.

BUT. — **sed** simply corrects or alters what precedes. — **at**: the strongest adversative. — **autem**: a weak adversative; carries on a train of thought. — **vērum, vērō**: in truth; affirms the truth or importance of an assertion. — **nisi** = except.

CALL. — **appellō**: to address one by his title. — **nōminō**: to name; to give a thing an appropriate name. — **vocō**: to call by name, to summon. — **dīcō**: to call anything according to what it is. — **cōnstituō**: to appoint.

CHARGE. See **CRIME.**

CHECK. See **HINDER.**

CHILDREN. — **puerī**: boys and girls with regard to age. — **līberī**: offspring in relation to parents.

CLAIM (see also **ASK**). — **dēposcō**: with urgency. — **repetō**: by entreaty. — **vindicō**: to lay claim to, claim as one's own.

COMMAND. See **BID.**

CONFESS. — **fateor**: general term, implying that one is asked. — **confiteor**: to acknowledge what one cannot conceal any longer.

CONQUER. — **vincō**: implies exertion to conquer opposition. — **superō**: (to rise above) surpass in any way. — **pellō**: to rout, put to flight. — **opprimō**: to crush. — **cōnficiō**: to weaken, use up, exhaust.

CONTEND. See **FIGHT.**

COUNCIL. — **concilium**: a meeting called together for taking counsel. — **consilium**: the same, but with stress laid on the thought of deliberation and decision. — **conventus**: a private meeting.

COURSE. — **via**: the road, street, way, in a concrete sense. — **iter**: the journey; the way in an abstract sense, or the way leading to a particular point.

CRIME. — **maleficium**: a visible effect of malicious intention. — **facinus**: a daring crime. — **scelus**: an offence against others, against society. — **crīmen**: a charge against a person; also a fault.

CUSTOM. — **consuētūdō**: arising from inclination or convenience. — **mōs**: arising from the dictates of reason, right, virtue, and decorum. — **īnstitūtum**: of what is sanctioned by law or general consent.

DAILY: DAY BY DAY. — **cotīdiē** (adj. **cotīdiānus**): applies to things that are daily repeated. — **in diēs**: applies to things that increase or decrease from day to day.

DEATH. — **mors**: natural death; the general term. — **interitus**: violent death.

DECIDE. — **statuō, cōnstituō**: to decide unsettled or disputed points. — **cēnseō**: to decide with authority, as of the senate. — **dēcernō**: to decide as the result of consultation or deliberation. — **discernō**: to decide by discriminating.

DECLARE. — **dēclārō**: to make clear, evident, manifest. — **ostendō**: to display, expose to view. — **profiteor**: to make public. — **doceō**: to give information. — **indīcō**: used of a formal declaration of war.

DECREE. — **cōnsultum**: the decree which embodies the action of a deliberative body. — **dēcrētum**: the decision of a magistrate, court, or senate. — **ēdictum**: the proclamation of a magistrate.

DEEM. See THINK.

DEFEAT. See CONQUER.

DEMAND. See ASK.

DESERT. See LEAVE.

DESIRE. See WISH.

DETERMINE. See DECIDE.

DISCERN. See SEE.

DISCLOSE. — **prōnūntiō**: to state publicly. — **ēnūntiō**: to reveal what should be kept secret. — **indicō**: to point out, inform. — **patefaciō**: to reveal a crime, plot, etc.

DISCOVER (see also FIND). — **comperiō**: to obtain knowledge of, ascertain. — **dēprehendō**: used especially of finding something wrong. — **patefaciō**: see DISCLOSE.

DISTINGUISHED. See NOBLE.

DWELL. See LIVE.

EDICT. See DECREE.

EITHER . . . OR. — **aut . . . aut**: used when one member of an alternative excludes the other. — **vel . . . vel**: used when there is a choice. — **sive . . . sive**: used when it is immaterial which is taken.

EMPLOY. See USE.

ENDURE. See SUFFER.

ENEMY. — **hostis**: a public enemy. — **inimīcus**: a private enemy.

ENTIRE. See ALL.

ESPECIALLY. — **imprīmis**: among the first, particularly, preëminently. — **maximē**: in the highest degree, exceedingly. — **praesertim**: mostly used before **cum** and **sī**. — **eximiē**: uncommonly, very much.

ETERNAL. — **sempiternus**: lasting as long as time itself. — **aeternus**: outlasting all time; without beginning or end.

EXCEL. See **SURPASS.**

FAIL. See **WANT.**

FEAR. — **metuō**: implies a fear based on precaution, deliberation, and circumspection. — **timeō**: a fear arising from weakness or cowardice. — **extimēscō, pertimēscō**: to be thoroughly frightened. — **vereor**; implies awe or dread, also hesitation.

FIGHT. — **pūgnō**: denotes a formal, intentional battle, requiring skill and courage. — **dīmicō**: used especially with reference to a speedy determination, and to what is at stake. — **proelior**: with reference to military movements. — **certō**: to match, vie with; implying great exertion. — **dēcertō**: with the added motion of persevering to the end. — **contendō**: to measure strength.

FINALLY. — **postrēmō, ad extrēmum**: of that which is last. — **dēnique**: used at the end of an enumeration. — **tandem**: implying the end of long delay or expectation.

FIND: **FIND OUT.** — **inveniō**: to come upon by chance. — **reperiō, rescīscō**: to find by seeking. — **comperiō**: to find with certainty. — **nancīscor**: to light upon, meet with. — **cōgnōscō**: to learn by inquiry and investigation. — **intellegō**: to understand. — **perspiciō**: to ascertain by close inspection. — **sentiō**: to find by the effects of anything, by experience.

FIRE. — **īgnis**: the general word. — **flamma**: blazing fire. — **incendium**: conflagration.

FIRST. — **prīnceps**: first in order, rank, or fame. — **prīmus**: first in time. — **prīmō** (adv.): the order beyond the control of the speaker or writer. — **prīmum** (adv.): the order within the control of the speaker or writer.

FORSAKE. See **LEAVE.**

FORTHWITH. See **IMMEDIATELY.**

GREAT. — **māgnus**: the general word; opp. to **parvus**. — **grandis, amplus**: with the added notion of becoming or imposing greatness. — **ingēns** denotes excessive greatness; huge, immense.

GUARD. See **AID.**

GUILT. See **CRIME.**

HABIT. See **CUSTOM.**

HAPPEN. — **fīō**: the general word. — **accidō**: used of unexpected, generally unfortunate, occurrences. — **contingō, obtingō**: generally, but not always, of fortunate occurrences.

HELP. See **AID.**

HINDER. — **impediō**: to entangle, hamper, embarrass. — **prohibeō**: to keep off, hold back, restrain. — **cohibeō**: to hold in check, keep (from anything). — **dēterreō**: to frighten off, discourage, deter. — **interclūdō**: to shut off, shut out, block up. — **arceō**: hold at a distance, check.

HOME. — **domus**: the general word. — **domicilium**: often used of one's legal residence. — **sēdēs**: where one sits or abides; abode. — **tēctum**, rooftree, dwelling.

IMMEDIATELY. — **statim**: on the spot; opp. to **deinde.** — **cōnfestim**: with all speed. — **continuō**: without any time intervening. — **prōtinus**: right on, without pause. See also **SUDDENLY.**

IMPEND. See **THREATEN.**

INHABIT. See **LIVE.**

JUDGE. See **THINK.**

KEEP. See **HINDER.**

KILL. — **interficiō**: in any manner whatever; the general word. — **caedō, occīdō**: to cut down, especially in open battle. — **trucidō**: to butcher in a bloodthirsty way. — **necō**: to destroy by wicked or cruel means. — **interimō**: to put out of the way (with an accessory notion of privacy).

KINDNESS. — **beneficium**: favors shown, services rendered. — **clēmentia**: gentleness, forbearance, indulgence.

KNOW. — **sciō**: to know, in the widest sense of the word. — **nōscō, cōgnōscō**: to become acquainted with, to learn by external marks or characteristics. — **intellegō**: to understand, comprehend, see into. — **sentiō**: to discern by the senses. — **percipiō**, to perceive, observe.

LABOR. — **opus**: as skilful or accomplishing its purpose; the result of labor. — **opera**: implying free will and desire to serve. — **labor**: toil, exertion (in its disagreeable aspect).

LACK. See **WANT.**

LARGE. See **GREAT.**

LAST. — **ultimus**: most remote in time or space; opp. to **proximus.**

— **extrēmus**: the outermost part of a space, or of a period of time; opp. **medius**. — **postrēmus**: the last in order; opp. **prīmus**. — **suprēmus** (**summus**): the highest, best, last (in time). — **proximus**: immediately preceding, as "last night."

LAW. — **iūs**: an entire body of laws; rightful authority, justice. — **lēx**: a special enactment.

LEARN. See FIND.

LEAVE. — **relinquō**: to go away from, leave behind; without any secondary implication. — **dēserō** implies leaving in the lurch in a cowardly or disloyal manner. — **abiciō**, **prōiciō**, **dēpōnō**: to leave what one does not find it advisable or profitable to keep. — **ēgredior**, **excēdō**, **discēdō**: to depart, go away. — **dēsistō**: to desist from.

LET. See ALLOW.

LINE. See ARMY.

LIVE. — **habitō**: the general term; to reside, commonly of individuals. — **incolō**: mostly used of a people. — **vīvō** has the various meanings of the Eng. "live."

LONG. — **diū**: through a long space of time; opp. **paulisper**. — **dūdum** (generally with **iam**): formerly; opp. **modo**. — **prīdem**: a long time ago; opp. **nūper**.

LOVE. — **amō**: the general term; to love from inclination or passion. — **dīligō**: to love from choice, esteem, and respect.

MADNESS. — **āmentia**: want of sense, intellectual blindness. — **furor**: blind rage, frenzy.

MAN. — **homō**: the general term; man as distinguished from other animals. — **vīr**: man with reference to his good qualities. — **is**: often used when a relative clause follows.

MIND. — **animus**: mind as opp. to body, soul, heart. — **mēns**: the thinking faculty, intellect.

MORE. — **plūs** has reference to quality. — **magis** has reference to quality or degree. — **amplius** denotes an increase (of time or space); longer, further.

MOUND. — **agger**: a pile heaped up (artificially); **tumulus** (swelling): a natural mound, hillock; also a sepulchral mound.

MURDER. See KILL.

MUST. — **necesse est**: obligation imposed by nature or necessity. — **dēbeō**: moral obligation based upon duty to one's self (subjective). — **oportet**: moral obligation based upon duty to others (objective). — **-ndum est**: general colorless way of expressing obligation.

NAME. See CALL.

NECESSARY. See MUST.

NEED. See WANT.

NEIGHBORS. — vīcīnī: with reference to house or premises. — fīnitimī: separated by a boundary.

NOBLE. — nōbilis: in reference to birth, family. — clārus, praeclārus: for eminent services to one's country. — summus: high in rank or dignity.

OBTAIN. — adipīscor: to acquire something desirable. — adsequor, cōnsequor: to gain by overtaking, to attain to. — impetrō: to get through strong entreaty.

OLD. — antīquus: that which existed long ago. — vetus: that which has existed for a long time; sometimes "good old"; sometimes "old and worn out." — prīscus: primitive; stronger than antīquus.

OPINION. — opīniō: an uncertain, indefinite view. — sententia: a well-considered view.

OR. — aut, vel, sive. See EITHER. — an: used only in double questions.

ORDER. See BID.

OTHER. — alter: the other of two. — alius: of more than two. — cēterī: the rest, all the others. — reliquus: what remains out of the whole.

OUGHT. See MUST.

OVERCOME, OVERPOWER. See CONQUER.

OWE. See MUST.

PEOPLE. — populus: all the people as a political whole. — plēbs: the lower class in contrast with the nobles. — volgus: the ignorant rabble, the mob. — hominēs: general term; men and women.

PERMIT. See ALLOW.

PLAN. — cōnsilium: project, design. — ratiō: course for carrying out any enterprise.

POOR. — miser: to be pitied. — egēns: destitute. — pauper: in humble circumstances.

POWER. — potestās: official power. — potentia: unofficial, personal power. — facultās: ability in general. — imperium: chiefly military power; supreme authority. — opēs: influence, resources, means. — vīs: strength, physical or moral. — cōpiae: the power that lies in money or soldiers. — robur: power to resist attack, firmness. — dominātiō: absolute, tyrannical sway.

PREVENT. See **HINDER.**

PUNISH. — **animadvertō**: a judicial term; to take cognizance of. — **vindicō, ulcīscor**: to take vengeance for, avenge. — **multō**: to punish by a fine or other judicial infliction. — **pūniō**: to take vengeance into one's own hands.

RELIEF. See **AID.**

REQUEST. See **ASK.**

RESERVE. See **AID.**

REST. See **OTHER.**

REWARD. — **praemium**: as a mark of favor. — **mercēs**: wages, price paid, bribe.

RIGHT. — **fās**: according to divine law. — **iūs**: according to human law. See **LAW.**

ROUTE. See **COURSE.**

RUIN. — **calamitās**: loss, disaster. — **perniciēs**: destruction, death. — **pestis**: plague, pestilence, death. — **ruīna**: a (violent) falling down, downfall.

SAFE. — **tūtus**: free from danger. — **salvus**: having escaped from danger. — **incolumis**: unhurt, unimpaired.

SAKE. See **ACCOUNT.**

SAY. — **loquor**: to talk; used of the language of conversation. — **dīcō**: to give expression to thought. — **inquam**: mostly used parenthetically in direct quotations. — **āiō**: to give one's opinion; to say "Yes," usually in indirect quotations. — **negō**: to say "No," deny.

SEE. — **videō**: general term. — **perspiciō, cōnspiciō**: to look at attentively, discern. — **cernō** (to separate): to behold clearly, discern. — **sentiō**: to discern by the senses, feel.

SEEK. See **ASK.**

SHOW. See **DECLARE.**

SLAY. See **KILL.**

SO. — **adeō**: to such a degree. — **tam**: used with adjs. and advs. — **ita, sīc**: used with verbs; **ita** generally refers to what precedes, **sīc** to what follows.

SPEAK. See **SAY.**

SPIRIT. See **MIND.**

STATE. — **cīvitās**: the state as a body of citizens. — **rēs pūblica**: with reference to its constitution and administration.

STATUE. — **signum, simulācrum**: usually of a god. — **statua**: usually of a man.

STORM. See BESIEGE.
STRENGTH. See POWER.
SUDDENLY. — repente, **repentīnō**: of what is unexpected. — **subitō**: of what is unforeseen.
SUFFER. — **patior**: general term; endure. — **ferō** implies energy and spirit. — **perferō**: to bear through to the end. — **subeō**: to undergo. — **doleō**: to feel pain.
SUMMON. — **vocō**: general term; to call. — **convocō**: to call together, assemble. — **arcessō**: to cause to approach, invite.
SURPASS. — **praecēdō**: to go before, outstrip. — **antecellō**: to be prominent, superior to. — **praestō**: to stand at the head of. — **superō**: to rise above, be superior to.

TAKE PLACE. See HAPPEN.
TELL. See SAY.
THANK. — **grātiam habeō**: to feel thankful. — **grātiās agō**: to express one's thanks in words. — **grātiam referō**: to express one's thanks in deeds.
THINK. — **cōgitō**: to consider thoroughly, ponder. — **arbitror**: to hold an opinion as an arbiter or judge. — **exīstimō**: to judge the value of anything as an appraiser. — **iūdicō**: to decide formally as a judge. — **putō**: to form an opinion after due examination. — **opīnor**: to have an impression, as a mere sentiment or conjecture. The last two used of merely private opinion.
THREATEN. — **minitor**: to utter threatening words, try to frighten — **impendeō**: to hang over, impend. — **immineō**: to be dangerously near to.
TOIL. See LABOR.
TRY. See ATTEMPT.

UNDERGO. See SUFFER.
UNDERSTAND. See KNOW.
USE. — **ūtor**: general term; to make use of. — **ūsūrpō**: to appropriate, practise. — **adhibeō**: to apply to a purpose.

VAIN (IN). — **frūstrā**: refers to the person disappointed. — **nēquīquam**: refers to the failure of result.

WALL. — **mūrus**: general term. — **moenia**: walls of a city, ramparts. — **pariēs**: of a house.
WANT. — **careō**: to be without; opp. **habeō**. — **egeō**: to be in absolute need. — **opus est**: there is need of, use for. — **dēsum**: to be wanting in, fail in. — **indigeō**: to stand in need of, require.

WAY. See **COURSE**.

WEAPONS. See **ARMS**.

WHOLE. See **ALL**.

WISH. — **volō**: general term for exercise of the will. — **cupiō** expresses a strong, passionate desire. — **dēsīderō**: to long for, miss. — **studeō** implies a striving for.

WORD. — **vōx**: a sound of the voice; verbal utterance. — **verbum**: word with reference to the thought.

WORK. See **LABOR**.

WRONG. — **iniūria**: an act of injustice. See also **CRIME**.

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

NOTE. — The grammars referred to are Allen and Greenough's (A.), Bennett's (B.), Gildersleeve's (G.), and Harkness's (H.). References in parentheses are to the old edition. ff. = and following. A comma means "and."

Numbers in heavy-faced type (following the grammatical references) *refer to pages* where the given constructions are treated. Figures in parentheses following page numbers refer to isolated illustrative sentences or remarks.

The pupil is advised, for his own convenience, to underscore the references to his particular grammar.

Ablative.

1. Absolute. A. 419, 420 (255); B. 227; G. 409, 410; H. 489. **7, 8, 28, 41, 169, 201.**

2. Of accompaniment or attendance. A. 413 (248. *a*); B. 222; G. 392; H. 473, 474. **39, 166.**

3. Of accordance. A. 418. *a* (253. N.); B. 220. 3; G. 397; H. 475. **34, 101** (5, 5), **170** (Ex. 7).

4. Of agent. A. 405 (246); B. 216; G. 401; H. 468, 1. **23, 91, 164.**

5. Of cause. A. 404 (245); B. 219; G. 408; H. 475. **78, 101, 166.**

6. Of comparison. A. 406 (247); B. 217; G. 398; H. 471. **78, 164.**

7. Of degree or measure of difference. A. 414 (250); B. 223; G. 403; H. 479. **21, 26, 116, 169.**

8. With *dignus*, etc. A. 418. *b* (245. *a*, 1); B. 226, 2; G. 397, 2; H. 481. **95** (4, 6), **111, 170** (Ex. 8).

9. With *frētus*, etc. A. 431. *a* (254. *b*, 2); B. 218, 3; G. 401, N.[6]; H. 476. 1. **40** (21, 8), **86** (13, 3).

10. Of manner. A. 412 (248); B. 220; G. 399; H. 473. 3. **27, 83, 98, 166.**

11. Of means or instrument. A. 409 (248. *c*. 1); B. 218; G. 401; H. 476. **33, 45, 82, 102, 166.**

12. With *ūtor*, etc. A. 431 (254, *b*); B. 218, 3; G. 401, N.[6]; H. 476. 3. **8** (13, 7), **32** (27, 5).

13. With *opus* and *ūsus*. A. 411 (243. *e*); B. 218, 2; G. 406; H. 477. iii. **129** (7), **167** (Ex. 3).

14. Of place in which or where. A. 426. 3 (258. *c*); B. 228; G. 385–389; H. 483, 485. **9**, **48**, **171**.

15. Of place from which. A. 426. 1, 2 (258); B. 229; G. 390, 391; H. 461, 462. **14** (30, 1), **47**, **48**, **171**.

16. Of price. A. 416 (252); B. 225; G. 404; H. 478. **11**, **169**.

17. Of quality or characteristic. A. 415 (251); B. 224; G. 400; H. 473, 2. **28**, **105**, **112**, **169**.

18. Of separation. A. 400–402 (243); B. 214; G. 390: H. 461–465. **47**, **91**, **164**.

19. Of source or origin and material. A. 403 (244); B. 215; G. 395, 396; H. 467–470. **38** (12, 5), **119** (N.5), **164**.

20. Of specification or respect. A. 418 (253); B. 226; G. 397; H. 480. **37**, **84**, **98**, **169**.

21. Of time. A. 423 (256); B. 230, 231; G. 393; H. 486, 487. **12**, **34**, **90**, **98**, **171**.

22. Of the way by which. A. 429. *a* (258. *g*); B. 218. 9; G. 389; H. 476. **5** (6, 4), **51** (9), **64** (26), **166**.

23. With *ūtor*, etc. A. 410 (249); B. 218. 1; G. 407; H. 477. **10**, **98**, **166**.

Accusative.

24. Adverbial. A. 390. *c*, *d*, N.2, 397. *a* (240, *a*, *b*); B. 176, 3; G. 333; H. 416. 2. **11** (20, 2), **102** (7, 3), **159**.

25. Cognate. A. 390. *b*, *c* (238, *b*); B. 176. 4; G. 333, 2; H. 409. **16** (32, 4), **159**.

26. Direct object. A. 387 (237); B. 172 ff.; G. 330; H. 404. **159**. Illustrations frequent.

27. In exclamations. A. 397. *d* (240. *d*); B. 183; G. 343. 1; H. 421. **81**, **161**.

28. Object of Intransitive verbs compounded with prepositions. A. 388. *b* (237. *d*); B. 175. 2. *a*; G. 331; H. 406. **7** (9, 6), **8** (12, 8), **45** (20, 2), **159**.

29. Of extent and duration. A. 423–425 (256, 257); B. 181; G. 335, 336; H. 417. **25**, **42**, **104**, **159**.

30. Of limit or end of motion. Terminal. A. 427. 2 (258, *b*); B. 182; G. 337; H. 418. 4. **101**, **161**.

31. Subject of Infinitive. A. 397. *e* (240. *f*); B. 184; G. 343. 2; H. 415, 610, 612. **5**, **199**. See also 107.

32. Of specification or respect. Greek acc. A. 397. *b* (240. *c*); B. 185; G. 338; H. 416, 2. **161**.

33. With verbs of feeling or emotion. A. 354. *b* (221. *b*); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457. See 88.

Two accusatives. Double accusative.

34. Same person or thing. Pred. acc. A. 393 (239, *a*); B. 177; G. 340; H. 410. **95, 161.**

35. Person and thing. Secondary object. A. 396 (239, 2, *c*); B. 178; G. 339; H. 411. **161.**

36. With compounds of *trāns*, etc. A. 395 (239, 2, *b*); B. 179; G. 331, R.1; H. 413. **161.**

Adjectives (adjective pronouns and participles).

37. Agreement with nouns. A. 285–287 (186, 187); B. 234; G. 211; H. 394, 395. **137.** Illustrations frequent.

38. With two or more nouns of different genders. A. 287 (187); B. 235, B; G. 285, 286; H. 395 ff. **104** (10, 8), **138** (R.2).

39. Denoting a part. A. 293 (193); B. 241, 1; G. 291. R.2; H. 497. 4. **12** (21, 1), **146** (R.2).

40. As adverbs. A. 299 (191); B. 239; G. 325. R.6; H. 497. **39** (18, 5), **165** (R.2).

41. As nouns. A. 288, 289 (188, 189); B. 236, 237; G. 204; H. 494. 5. **24** (3, 3), **139** (R.3).

42. **Adverbs.** A. 321 (207); B. 140; G. 440; H. 654–656.

Agreement. See Adjectives and Apposition.

43. Of relative with antecedent. A. 305, 306 (198, 199); B. 250; G. 614; H. 396–399. **14** (30, 3–6), **88** (5, 1), **137.**

44 Of verb with subject. A. 316, 317 (204, 205); B. 254; G. 211; H. 388, 390, 391. **31, 137.**

45. Of verb with two or more subjects. A. 317 (205); B. 255; G. 285–287; H. 392. **137.** Illustrations frequent.

46. **Alius** and **alter.** A. 315. *a* (203); B. 253; G. 319; H. 516. **189** (R.3).

47. **Amplius**, etc., without *quam*. A. 407. *c* (247. *c*); B. 217. 3; G. 296. 4; H. 471. 4. **29, 164** (Ex. 10).

Antecedent in rel. clause. See 154.

Antequam. See 178.

48. **Apposition.** A. 281, 282 (183, 184); B. 169; G. 320, 321; H. 393. **24, 137.**

Arrangement. See Order, 123.

Causal clauses.

49. With *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, and *quandō*. A. 540 (321); B. 286; G. 539–542; H. 588. **44, 80, 89, 196.**

50. With *cum*. A. 549 (326); B. 286. 2; G. 586; H. 598. **32, 85, 196.**

51. With the relative. A. 535. *e* (320, *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 633; H. 592 **17, 46, 104, 186.**

Characteristic clauses. See 155.

52. Concessive and adversative clauses. A. 527, 549 (313); B. 308, 309; G. 587, 603–609; H. 585, 586, 593. 2, 598. See also 156. **43**, **49**, **88**, **196**.

Conditional sentences.

53. First form or type; logical; pres., past, fut. (*more vivid*). A. 515, 516 (306, 307); B. 302; G. 595; H. 574, 575. **22**, **27**, **81**, **102**, **193**.

54. Second form or type; ideal; fut. (*less vivid*). A. 516. 2, *b*, *c* (307. 2, *b*, *c*); B. 303; G. 596; H. 576, 577. **22**, **40**, **77**, **102**, **193**.

55. Third form or type; unreal; contrary to fact. A. 517 (308); B. 304; G. 597; H. 579. **76**, **90**, **102**, **193**.

56. Third form with indicative in apodosis. A. 517. *b*, *c*, 522. *a* (308. *b*, *c*, 311. *c*); B. 304. 3, *b*; G. 597. 2, 3; H. 582, 583. **97** (8, 6), **125** (7), **194** (Ex. 8).

57. Third form with imperf. subjv. referring to past time. A. 517. *a* (308 *a*); B. 304. 2; G. 595. R.[1]; H. 579. 1.

58. In indirect discourse. A. 589 (337); B. 319, 321; G. 656, 659; H. 646. **54** (31), **61** (32), **211**.

59. Condition omitted. A. 522 (311); G. 600.

60. Of comparison (conclusion omitted). A. 524 (312); B. 307; G. 602; H. 584. **193**.

61. Conjunctions. A. 323 (208); B. 341–346; G. 474 ff.; H. 657–661.

62. Conjunctions repeated or omitted. A. 323. *c*, 1–3 (208. *b*, 1, 2); B. 341, 4, *a–c*; G. 481; H. 657. 6. **139** (6, 7, 8), **178** (86, 5).

Consecutive clauses. See Result.

Cum (conj.). See 50, 52, 179.

Dative.

63. With adjectives. A. 383–385 (234); B. 192; G. 359; H. 434. **16**, **34**, **156**.

64. Of agent. A. 374 (232); B. 189; G. 354, 355; H. 431. **30**, **46**, **85**, **156**.

65. With compounds. A. 370 (228); B. 187, iii.; G. 347; H. 429. **7**, **32**, **84**, **94**, **154**.

66. Ethical. A. 380 (236); B. 188. 2. *b*; G. 351; H. 432. **154**.

67. Of indirect object. A. 361–367 (225, 226); B. 187; G. 345, 346; H. 424 ff. Illustrations frequent.

68. Of possessor. A. 373 (231); B. 190; G. 349; H. 430. **43**, **99**, **156**.

69. Of purpose, end or object for which. A. 382 (233); B. 191; G. 356; H. 433. **13**, **32**, **99**, **156**.

70. Of reference, influence or interest. A. 376 (235); B. 188; G. 352; H. 425. **1**, 2, 4. **14**, 154.

71. Of separation. A. 381 (229); B. 188. 2. *d*; G. 347. 5; H. 427. **31, 154.**

72. With special verbs. A. 367 (227); B. 187, ii.; G. 346; H. 426, 1. **3, 92, 152.**

73. **Dum** with pres. ind. A. 556 (276. *e*); B. 293; G. 570; H. 533. 4. **60** (25), **110, 179.**

Dum, dōnec, and **quoad.** See 180.

74. **Dum, modo,** etc., in clauses of proviso. A. 528 (314); B. 310; G. 573; H. 587. **196.**

75. **Emphasis.** A. 597 (344); B. 349; G. 672. 2 (*a*); H. 665. **6, 33, 108, 137.**

Final clauses. See Purpose.

76. **Fore (futūrum esse) ut** with subjv. for fut. inf. A. 569. *a* (288. *f*); B. 270. 3; G. 248; H. 619. 2. **81** (3, 7), **92** (11, 6).

Genitive.

77. With adjectives. A. 349 (218); B. 204; G. 374; H. 450 ff. **40, 81** (4, 3), **147.**

78. In apposition with poss. pron. A. 302. *e* (184. *d*); G. 321. 2; H. 393. 6. **94** (2, 5).

79. Of quality; descriptive. A. 345 (215); B. 203; G. 365; H. 440, 3. **28, 29, 105, 145.**

80. Of measure. A. 345. *b* (215. *b*); B. 203, 2; G. 365. 2; H. 440, 3. **6, 145.**

81. Objective. A. 347, 348 (217); B. 200; G. 363. 2; H. 440, 2. **17, 147.**

82. Partitive; of the whole. A. 346 (216); B. 201; G. 367-372; H. 440. 5, 441-444. **26, 75, 145.**

83. Possessive. A. 343 (214); B. 198; G. 362; H. 440, 1. **30, 145.**

84. Predicate Genitive. A. 343. *b* (214. 1. *c*); B. 198. 3, 203. 5; G. 366; H. 447 ff. **94, 145** (17, 3).

85. Of price or value. A. 417 (252, *a*); B. 203. 3; G. 379; H. 448. **77** (9, 5), **121** (9), **149.**

86. Subjective. A. 343. N.[1] (214); B. 199; G. 363; H. 440, 1. **118, 145.**

87. With *interest* and *rēfert*. A. 355 (222); B. 211; G. 381; H. 449. **25, 58** (5), **95, 149.**

88. With verbs of feeling or emotion. A. 354 (221); B. 209; G. 377; H. 457. **42, 98, 115, 149.**

89. With judicial verbs; of charge and penalty. A. 352 (220); B. 208; G. 378; H. 456. **73, 147.**

90. With verbs of memory. A. 350 (219); B. 206; G. 376; H. 454, 455 **9, 93 (1, 2), 147.**

91. With verbs of plenty and want. A. 356 (223); B. **212**; G. **383**; H. 458. **149**.

Gerund and the gerundive construction. **19**, **21**, **30**, **206**.

92. Genitive. A. 504 (298); B. 338. 1, 339; G. 428; H. 626. **83**, **114**.

93. Dative. A. 505. *a* (299); B. 338. 2, 339; G. 429; H. 627.

94. Accusative. A. 506, N.[1] (300); B. 338. 3, 339; G. 430, 432; H. 628. **114**.

95. Ablative. A. 507 (301); B. 338. 4, 339; G. **431**, **433**; H. 629–631. **114**.

Gerundive. See Fut. Pass. Part., 127.

96. **Historical present.** A. 469 (276. *d*); B. 259. 3; G. 229; H. 532. 3. **179**. Illustrations frequent.

Hortatory subjunctive. See 171.

97. **Iam, iam diū**, etc., with pres. or imp. ind. A. 466 (276. *a*); B. 259. 4; G. 230; H. 533. **75**, **179**.

98. **Imperative.** A. 448 (269); B. 281; G. 266 ff.; H. 560. **36**, **109**, **179**.

99. **Imperative, future.** A. 449 (269, *d*, *e*); B. 281. 1; G. 267, R.; H. 560. **81** (3, 3), **179**, **213** (155, 1).

Imperfect indicative.

100. Of customary and repeated action. A. 470 (277); B. 260, 2; G. 231, 233; H. 534. 3. **47**, **63** (15), **122** (N.[1]), **179**.

101. Of attempted and continued action, etc. A. 471, *c* (277, *c*); B. 260, 3; G. 233; H. 530, 535. **58** (6), **68** (28), **87**, **179**.

102. **Impersonal verbs.** A. 208 (146); B. 138; G. 208; H. 302 ff. **30**, **116**.

103. **Impersonal uses**: passive of intransitive verbs. A. 208. *d*, 372 (146. *d*, 230); B. 187. ii. *b*, 256. 3; G. 208. 2, 346 R.[1]; H. 302. 6. **13**, **19**, **27**, **63** (13).

104. **In** and **sub** with acc. and abl. A. 221, 12, 22 (153); B. 143; G. 418; H. 420. 3. **12**, **174**.

105. **Indicative.** A. 437 (264); B. 271; G. 254; H. 523–525. Illustrations frequent.

106. Tenses of. A. 465 ff. (276 ff.); B. 257 ff.; G. 222 ff.; H. 526 ff. **178**.

107. **Indirect discourse.** *Ōrātiō oblīqua.* A. 579 ff. (336 ff.); B. 313 ff.; G. 508. 2, 648 ff.; H. 641 ff. **45**, **74**, **103**, **109**, **209**.

108. Informal or implied. A. 592 (341); B. 323; G. 508. 3, 663, 2; H. 649. i. **211**.

109. Subordinate clauses in. A. 580 (336. 2); B. 314–316; G. 650 ff.; H. 643. **45** (19, 1, 2), **52** (16), **55** (N.[13]), **120** (4), **109** (8, 3), **209**.

110. Commands in. A. 588 (339); B. 316; G. 652; H. 642. **54** (N.3), **209**
Conditional sentences in. See 58.
111. Declarative sentences in. A. 580, 582 (336); B. 313, 314; G. 648-650; H. 642. **209.** Illustrations frequent.
112. Questions in. A. 586 (338); B. 315; G. 651; H. 642. **209.**
Infinitive.
113. Complementary. A. 456 (271); B. 328; G. 423; H. 607, 608. **35, 92, 199.**
114. As object. A. 459 (272, 330. B); B. 331; G. 527, 532, 533; H. 613, 614. **199.**
115. As subject or predicate. A. 452 (270); B. 327, 330; G. 422, 424, 535; H. 615, 616. **4, 58** (N.7), **199.**
116. Historical. A. 463 (275); B. 335; G. 647; H. 610. **199.**
Subject of. See Accusative, 31.
117. Tenses of. A. 486, 584 (288, 336, A); B. 270, 317; G. 281, 530, 531; H. 617-620. **5, 45, 199.**
118. Future, with verbs of promising, etc. A. 580. *c* (330. *f*); B. 331; G. 423, 5. **35, 68** (27), **126** (N.1), **205** (R.2).
119. With *iubeō* and *vetō*. A. 563. *a* (331. *a*); B. 331, ii.; G. 423, N.6; H. 565. 3. **184** (R.2).
Interrogative sentences. See Questions.
120. Locative. A. 427. 3 (258, *c*. 2); B. 232; G. 411; H. 483, 484. 2. **61** (N.16), **100, 174.**
Nominative.
121. Predicate. A. 283, 284 (176, 185); B. 167, 168; G. 205, 206, 325; H. 393. **3, 95, 137.**
122. Subject. A. 339 (173); B. 166; G. 203; H. 387. **3.** Illustrations frequent.
Optative subjunctive. See 171.
123. Order of words. A. 596 ff. (343 ff.); B. 348 ff.; G. 671 ff.; H. 664 ff. **6, 33, 108, 137.**
124. Participles. A. 488 ff. (289 ff.); B. 336, 337; G. 664 ff.; H. 636 ff. **20, 28, 41, 201, 204.**
125. Attributive and predicate uses. A. 494–497 (291, 292); B. 337; G. 664 ff.; H. 637–640. **201.**
126. Equivalent to infinitive. A. 497. *d* (292. *e*); B. 337. 3; G. 536; H. 613. 4. **96** (6, 5), **201.**
127. Future passive (gerundive). A. 500, 1–4 (294, *a–d*); B. 337. 7, *b*, 2; G. 430; H. 622. **8, 204.**
128. Substitutes for perf. act. A. 493 (290. *d*); G. 410, 1; H. 640. 4. **8 (67, 17), 150** (R.2).

129. Tenses of. A. 489 (290); B. 336; G. 282, 283; H. 640. **201.**

130. **Periphrastic conjugation**, first, or active. A. 193–196, 498. *a* (129, 293. *a*); B. 115; G. 247; H. 236, 531. **113**, **204.**

131. **Periphrastic conjugation**, second, or passive. A. 193–196, 500. 2 (129, 294. *b*); B. 115, 337. 7, *b*; G. 251; H. 237, 621. 1, 2. **18**, **85**, **106**, **126** (1) (3), **204.**

132. **Personal construction for impersonal.** A. 582 (330. *a*, *b*); B. 332; G. 528; H. 611. **83** (7, 2), **90** (8, 3).

Postquam. See 181.

Potential subjunctive. See 173.

133. **Predicate noun or adjective.** A. 283, 284 (176, *a*, *b*); B. 167, 168; G. 205, 206, 325; H. 393. Illustrations frequent.

134. **Prepositions.** A. 220 ff. (152 ff.); B. 141 ff.; G. 412 ff.; H. 420, 490. **174.**

Priusquam. See 178.

135. **Prohibitions.** A. 450 (269. *a*); B. 276; G. 263, 271. 2; H. 561. **117**, **177** (R.1), **179** (R.1).

Pronouns. For Agreement, see 43. **14.**

136. Demonstrative and determinative. A. 146, 296–298 (100–102, 195); B. 246; G. 305–311; H. 505–509. **67** (N.6), **142.**

137. Indefinite. A. 309 ff. (202); B. 252; G. 313–319; H. 512–515. **142.**

138. Interrogative. A. 148, 150 (104, 105); B. 90; G. 106; H. 511. **142.**

139. Personal. A. 295 (194); B. 242; G. 304; H. 500. **140.**

140. Possessive. A. 302 (197); B. 243; G. 312; H. 501. **140.**

141. Reciprocal. A. 301. *f* (196. *f*); B. 245; G. 221; H. 502. 1. **140.**

142. Reflexive. A. 299–301 (196); B. 244; G. 309; H. 502–504. **140.**

143. Relative. A. 303–8 (197. 5–201); B. 250; G. 610 ff.; H. 510. **142.**

Proviso, clauses of, with *dum*, etc. See 74.

Purpose or final clauses.

144. Pure purpose with *ut* or *nē*. A. 531 (317); B. 282; G. 545; H. 568, 590. **4**, **41**, **86**, **107**, **183.**

145. With *quō*. A. 531. 2. *a* (317. *b*); B. 282, *a*; G. 545, 2; H. 568. 7. **38**, **183.**

146. With the relative. A. 531. 2 (317. 2); B. 282. 2; G. 630; H. 590. **16**, **24**, **88**, **183.**

147. Substantive or complementary. A. 563–566 (331); B. 295, 296; G. 546–549; H. 564–567, 568. 2. **11**, **100**, **114**, **183.**

148. After verbs of fearing. A. 564 (331. *f*); B. 296, 2; G. 550; H. 567. **18**, **20**, **183.**

Purpose expressed by *ad* with acc. of gerund or gerundive. See 94.

By *causā* with gen. of gerund or gerundive. See 92.
By the supine. See 176.
Questions.
149. Direct. A. 330–332 (210); B. 162; G. 452 ff.; H. 378. **11, 73, 181.**
150. Double or disjunctive. A. 334, 335 (211); B. 162. 4; G. 458, 459; H. 380. **22, 96, 115, 181.**
151. Rhetorical or Deliberative. A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559. **20, 93, 103, 112, 176.**
152. Indirect. A. 573–575 (210. 2, 334); B. 315; G. 460, 467; H. 649, ii. **15, 38, 73, 106, 181.**
153. Interrogative particles, *-ne*, *nōnne*, and *num*. A. 332. *a*, *b* (210. *a*, *c*); B. 162, 2; G. 454–456; H. 378. **11, 181.**
Quīn. See 164.
Quō. See 145.
Quod, quia, quoniam, quandō. See 49 and 175.
Relative clauses.
154. Antecedent in. A. 307 (200); B. 251. 4; G. 616. **143** (Ex. 2).
Of cause or reason. See 51.
155. Of characteristic. A. 535 (320); B. 283; G. 631, 1, 2; H. 591, 1, 4, 5. See also 160. **23, 76, 96, 110, 186.**
156. Of concession or opposition. A. 535. *e* (320. *e*); B. 283. 3; G. 634; H. 593, 2. **186.**
157. With *dignus*, etc. A. 535. *f* (320. *f*); B. 282. 3; G. 631, 1; H. 591, 7. **108, 186.**
Of purpose or design. See 146.
Of result or tendency. See 162.
158. Of restriction and proviso. A. 535. *d* (320. *d*); B. 283. 5; G. 527. R.[1]; H. 591. 3. **97, 186.**
159. Position of. A. 308. *d* (201. *c*); G. 620; H. 683, 2, N. **67** (23), **180** (R.[3]).
160. With *ūnus* and *sōlus*. A. 535. *b* (320. *b*); B. 283. 2; G. 631, 1; H. 591, 5. **97** (7, 1–3), **111** (10, 6), **186.**
Result or consecutive clauses.
161. Pure result with *ut*, *ut nōn*, and *quīn*. A. 536–538 (319); B. 284; G. 552; H. 570. **36, 86, 107, 113, 188.**
162. Relative. A. 537. 2 (319. 2); B. 284. 2; G. 631; H. 591. **79, 188.**
163. Substantive or complementary. A. 568, 569 (332, *a*); B. 297; G. 553; H. 571. **15, 188.**
164. With *quīn* after verbs of doubting, etc. A. 558, *a*, N.[2] (319. *d*, 332. *g*); B. 298; G. 555, 556; H. 594. ii., 595, 596. **10, 113, 188.**

165. Roman calendar. A. 424. *g*, 631 (259. *e*, 376); B. 371, 372; G. p. 491; H. 754 ff. **5, 171.**

166. Sequence of tenses. A. 482–485 (285–287); B. 267, 268; G. 509 ff.; H. 543–545. **15, 36, 181.**

167. Perf. subjv. after secondary tense. **A. 485. *c* (287. *c*); B. 268. 6; G. 513; H. 550. 181.**

Subject. See 31 and 122.

Subjunctive.

168. By attraction; of integral part. **A. 593 (342); B. 324;** G. 663; H. 652. **53** (24), **81** (2, 5), **211.**

169. Concessive. A. 440 (313. *i*); B. 278; G. 264; H. 559, 3. **98** (10, 7), **99** (11, 2), **176.**

170. Deliberative. A. 444 (268); B. 277; G. 465, 466; H. 559, 4. **20, 93, 103, 112, 176.**

171. Hortatory and Jussive. A. 439, 440 (266); B. 274, 275; G. 263; H. 559, 1, 2. **79, 117, 123** (8), **176.**

172. Optative. A. 441 (267); B. 279; G. 260, 261; H. 558. **77, 176.**

173. Potential. A. 445–447 (311. *a*); B. 280; G. 257–259; H. 552–557. **122** (2), **176.**

174. Tenses of. A. 480 ff. (283 ff.); B. 266 ff.; G. 277; H. 541 ff.
See also 49–52, 54–58, 74, 108, 109, 143 ff., 150, 154–157, 160–163, 178–181.

175. Substantive clauses with quod. A. 572 (333); B. 299; G. 524, 525; H. 588. 3, 4. **57** (50), **114** (16, 1), **158** (46, 13).

176. Supine in um. A. 509 (302); B. 340; G. 435; H. 633. **7, 206.**

177. Supine in ū. A. 510 (303); B. 340. 2; G. 436; H. 635. **48** (9), **206.**

Temporal clauses.

178. With *antequam* and *priusquam*. A. 550, 551 (327); B. 291, 292; G. 574–577; H. 605. **37, 87, 191.**

179. With *cum*. A. 545–548 (325); B. 288, 289; G. 580, 585; H. 600, 601. **14, 82, 191.**

180. With *dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*. A. 552–556 (328); B. 293; G. 571, 572; H. 603, 604. **44, 47** (23, 5), **191.**

181. With *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc. A. 543 (324); B. 287; G. 561–563; H. 602. **39, 46** (19, 3), **190.**

182. Time before or after an event. A. 424. *f* (259. *d*); B. 223, 357; G. 403, 4; H. 488. **21** (47, 1), **116** (20, 5).

183. Ut omitted. A. 565, Notes, *a* (331. *f*. R., *i*. N. 1, 2); B. 295. 8; G. 546. R.2, 553, 4, R.1; H. 564. ii. 1. **81** (2, 7), **178** (86, 6).

184. Vocative. A. 340 (241); B. 171; G. 201. R.1, 2; H. 402. **77** (1, 12)

THE STUDENTS' SERIES OF LATIN CLASSICS.

UNDER THE EDITORIAL SUPERVISION OF

ERNEST MONDELL PEASE, A.M.,

Late Leland Stanford Junior University,

AND

HARRY THURSTON PECK, PH.D., L.H.D.,

Columbia University.

This Series contains the Latin authors usually read in American schools and colleges, and also others well adapted to class-room use, but not heretofore published in suitable editions. The several volumes are prepared by special editors, who aim to revise the text carefully and to edit it in the most serviceable manner. Where there are German editions of unusual merit, representing years of special study under the most favorable circumstances, these are used, with the consent of the foreign editor, as a basis for the American edition. In this way it is possible to bring out text-books of the highest excellence in a comparatively short period of time.

The editions are of two kinds, conforming to the different methods of studying Latin in our best institutions. Some contain in the introductions and commentary such a careful and minute treatment of the author's life, language, and style as to afford the means for a thorough appreciation of the author and his place in Latin literature. Others aim merely to assist the student to a good reading knowledge of the author, and have only the text and brief explanatory notes at the bottom of each page. The latter are particularly acceptable for sight reading, and for rapid reading after the minute study of an author or period in one of the fuller editions. For instance, after a class has read a play or two of Plautus and Terence carefully, with special reference to the peculiarities of style, language, metres, the methods of presenting a play, and the like, these editions will be admirably suited for the rapid reading of other plays.

The Series also contains various supplementary works prepared by competent scholars. Every effort is made to give the books a neat and attractive appearance.

The following volumes for **College** *use are now ready or in preparation:—*

ATLAS OF THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF THE ANCIENT WORLD. Edited by JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*

CATULLUS, Selections, based upon the edition of Riese. By THOMAS B. LINDSAY, Ph.D., Professor in Boston University.

CICERO, De Senectute et de Amicitia. By CHARLES E. BENNETT A.M., Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready*

CICERO, Tusculan Disputations, Books I and II. By Professor PECK.

CICERO, De Oratore, Book I, based upon the edition of Sorof. By W. B. OWEN, Ph.D., Professor in Lafayette College. *Ready*

CICERO, Select Letters, based in part upon the edition of Süpfle-Böckel. By Professor PEASE.

GELLIUS, Selections. By Professor PECK.

GREEK AND ROMAN MYTHOLOGY. By KARL P. HARRINGTON, A.M., University of Maine, and HERBERT C. TOLMAN, Ph.D., Vanderbilt University.

HAND-BOOK OF LATIN SYNONYMS. By Mr. MILLER.

HORACE, Odes and Epodes. By PAUL SHOREY, Ph.D., Professor in the Chicago University. *Ready*

HORACE, Satires and Epistles, based upon the edition of Kiessling. By JAMES H. KIRKLAND, Ph.D., Professor in Vanderbilt University. *Ready.*

JUVENAL, Satires. By JAMES C. EGBERT, Jr., Ph.D., Professor of Latin, and NELSON G. MCCREA, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin, Columbia University.

LATIN COMPOSITION, for College Use. By WALTER MILLER, A.M., Professor in the Tulane University. *Ready.*

LATIN COMPOSITION, for Advanced Classes. By H. R. FAIRCLOUGH, Ph.D., Professor in the Leland Stanford Jr. University.

LIVY, Books XXI and XXII, based upon the edition of Wölfflin. By JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*

LIVY, Book I, for rapid reading. By Professor LORD. *Ready.*

MARTIAL, Selections. By CHARLES KNAPP, Ph.D., Professor in Barnard College.

NEPOS, for rapid reading. By ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D., Associate Professor in the University of California. *Ready.*

PETRONIUS, Cena Trimalchionis, based upon the edition of Bücheler. By W. E. WATERS, Ph.D., the University of New York. *Ready.*

PLAUTUS, Captivi, for rapid reading. By GROVE E. BARBER, A.M., Professor in the University of Nebraska. *Ready.*

PLAUTUS, Menaechmi, based upon the edition of Brix. By HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready*

PLAUTUS, Trinummus. By H. C. NUTTING, Ph.D., Instructor in Latin in the University of California. *Ready.*

PLINY, Select Letters, for rapid reading. By SAMUEL BALL PLATNER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*

QUINTILIAN, Book X, based upon the edition of Krüger. By EMORY B. LEASE, Ph.D., Instructor in the College of the City of New York.

SALLUST, Catiline, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By CHARLES G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the City of New York. *Ready.*

SENECA, Select Letters. By E. C. WINSLOW, A.M.

SPECIMENS OF LATIN LITERATURE.

Classical Prose. By JOHN FRANCIS GREENE, A.M., Professor in Brown University.

Classical Poetry.

Early Latin. By HENRY F. LINSCOTT, Ph.D., Professor in the University of North Carolina.

Latin Hymns. By WILLIAM A. MERRILL, Ph.D., Professor in the University of California.

Silver Prose. By ARTHUR L. WHEELER, Ph.D., Professor in Bryn Mawr College.

Silver Poetry. By WALTER A. DENNISON, Ph.D., Professor in University of Michigan.

TACITUS, Annals, Book I and Selections from Book II, based upon the edition of Nipperdey-Andresen.

TACITUS, Agricola and Germania, based upon the editions of Schweizer-Sidler and Dräger. By A. G. HOPKINS, Ph.D., Late Professor in Hamilton College. *Ready.*

TACITUS, Histories, Book I and Selections from Books II–V, based upon the edition of Wolff. By EDWARD H. SPIEKER, Ph.D., Professor in the Johns Hopkins University.

TERENCE, Adelphoe, for rapid reading. By WILLIAM L. COWLES, A.M., Professor in Amherst College. *Ready*

TERENCE, Phormio, based upon the edition of Dziatzko. By HERBERT C. ELMER, Ph.D., Assistant Professor in the Cornell University. *Ready.*

THE PRIVATE LIFE OF THE ROMANS, a manual for the use of schools and colleges. By HARRIET WATERS PRESTON and LOUISE DODGE. *Ready.*

TIBULLUS AND PROPERTIUS, Selections, based upon the edition of Jacoby. By HENRY F. BURTON, A.M., Professor in the University of Rochester.

VALERIUS MAXIMUS, Fifty Selections, for rapid reading. By CHARLES S. SMITH, A.M., late College of New Jersey. *Ready.*

VELLEIUS PATERCULUS. Historia Romana, Book II. By F. E. ROCKWOOD, A.M., Professor in Bucknell University. *Ready*

Books for the **Secondary School**: —

A FIRST BOOK IN LATIN. *Revised, 1903.* By HIRAM TUELL, A.M., late Principal of the Milton High School, Mass., and HAROLD N. FOWLER, Ph.D., Professor in the Western Reserve University. *Ready.*

A BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN. By TUELL and FOWLER. *Ready.*

A NEW LATIN COMPOSITION, for Schools. *Revised, 1905.* By M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M., and SELDON L. BROWN, A.M., Principal of High School, Wellesley, Mass. *Ready.*

A NEW GRADATIM. By M. C. SMART, A.M., Principal of Littleton (N.H.) High School. *Ready.*

ATLAS OF THE GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF THE ANCIENT WORLD. Edited by JOHN K. LORD, Ph.D., Professor in Dartmouth College. *Ready.*

CAESAR, Gallic War, Books I–V. By HAROLD W. JOHNSON, Ph.D., Professor in the Indiana University, and FREDERICK W. SANFORD, A.M., University of Chicago. *Ready.*

CICERO, Pro Ligario. By CLARENCE H. WHITE, Colby College. *Ready.*

CICERO, Select Orations. By BENJ. L. D'OOGE, Ph.D., Professor in the Michigan State Normal College. *Ready.*

CICERO, Select Letters. By GEORGE V. EDWARDS, Ph.D., Michigan Normal College. *Ready.*

EUTROPIUS, Selections. By VICTOR S. CLARK, Lit.D. *Ready.*

LATIN GRAMMATICAL REVIEW (Part III of Daniell's Latin Composition, 1905). By M. GRANT DANIELL, A.M., and SELDON L. BROWN, A.M. *Ready.*

NEPOS, Selections. By J. C. JONES, A.M., Professor in the University of Missouri.

OVID, Selections from the Metamorphoses, based upon the edition of Meuser-Egen. By B. L. WIGGINS, A.M., Professor in the University of the South.

OVID, Selections, for rapid reading. By A. L. BONDURANT, A.M., Professor in the University of Mississippi.

SALLUST, Catiline, based upon the edition of Schmalz. By CHARLES G. HERBERMANN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor in the College of the City of New York. *Ready.*

VERGIL, Books I–VI. By WILLIAM H. KIRK, Ph.D., Professor in Rutgers College.

VERGIL, The Story of Turnus from Aen. VII–XII, for rapid reading. By MOSES SLAUGHTER, Ph.D., Professor in the University of Wisconsin. *Ready.*

VIRI ROMAE, Selections. With Prose Exercises. By G. M. WHICHER, A.M., Teachers' Normal College, New York City *Ready.*

BENJ. H. SANBORN & CO., Publishers,
Boston, New York, Chicago, London.